



The traditional representation of the Queen of Sheba story  
(see pp. 139-42)

# ETHIOPIA AND THE BIBLE

EDWARD ULLENDORFF

M.A. (Jerusalem), D.Phil. (Oxford)  
Fellow of the Academy  
Professor of Ethiopian Studies  
in the University of London

THE SCHWEICH LECTURES  
OF THE BRITISH ACADEMY  
1967

LONDON  
PUBLISHED FOR THE BRITISH ACADEMY  
BY THE OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS  
1968

143811



## PREFACE

THE present volume is a survey rather than a study in depth. This limitation arises, partly, from the purpose and character of the Schweich Lectures and, partly, from a lack of prolegomena of serious dimensions in the field of the Ethiopic Bible translations. On a few of the other subjects here treated I have touched in some earlier studies. I have considered carefully what has been written, especially by M. Rodinson, since I first discussed—in the mid 1950s—the Hebraic ingredients in Abyssinian Christianity. I have, however, not hesitated to plagiarize those previous writings of mine in cases where I felt unable to progress beyond those earlier positions. In any event, I expect this to be my final contribution to the study of Hebraic-Jewish elements in Ethiopian monophysite Christianity or to the ramifications of the Sheba legend. In foreseeable circumstances I would not wish to return to these subjects, as I feel that I have now said everything in this sphere that I am capable of saying.

I should like to express my sincere gratitude to the members of the Schweich Committee for the great honour they have done me in inviting me to deliver this series of lectures. There are so many illustrious names among my predecessors, including those of some of my own teachers, that I have at all times contemplated this task with awe and reverence as well as with a genuine sense of inadequacy on my part.

I wish to thank Sir Mortimer Wheeler, C.H., and his most helpful staff for their unfailing kindness during the period of the lectures and the printing of this volume.

My colleague, Dr. A. K. Irvine, has been good enough to read the typescript and to offer some valuable criticisms.

My wife has subjected my manuscript to critical scrutiny and has, as usual, made herself responsible for all the physical aspects of preparing the typescript for the printers.

I am greatly obliged to Mr. Richard Hosking of the British Museum and to Professor C. F. Beckingham for lending me their excellent slides for illustrating the Schweich lectures and for permitting me to include some of them among the Plates of this volume.



I am also grateful to the B.B.C. for lending me a colour transparency of my Queen of Sheba picture of which they took a photograph for one of their programmes in the 'Chronicle' series.

E. U.

December 1967

## CONTENTS

PREFACE	vii
LIST OF PLATES	xi
ABBREVIATIONS	xiii
INTRODUCTION	i
The Ethiopian scene: the Biblical setting (1) Biblical references to Ethiopia (5) Historical background (15)	
I. BIBLE TRANSLATIONS	31
General considerations (31) Time, authorship, and <i>Varlage</i> of Ethiopic translations (36) Tentative conclusions (55) Bible translations into some modern Ethiopian languages (62)	
II. THE IMPACT OF THE OLD TESTAMENT	73
Introductory (73) The <i>Kebra Nagast</i> (74) Magic (79) The Ark of the Covenant (82) Church Building (87) Music (89) Liturgy (97) Dietary Prescriptions (100) Ritual Cleanliness (104) Circumcision (105) Sabbath Observance (109) Concluding Observations (113) Excursus on the Falashas (115)	
EXCURSUS ON THE LINGUISTIC FACTORS	
Introductory (119) Hebrew and Aramaic loanwords in Ge'ez (120) The contribution of Ethiopic to Old Testament lexicography (125)	
III. THE QUEEN OF SHEBA	131
Sacral kingship (131) The Old Testament story (132) New Testament references (134) Josephus and the Talmud (135) Islamic sources (136) Midrashic material (138) The Ethiopian version (139) European literature and art (143)	
BIBLIOGRAPHY	146
INDEXES	
(a) General	161
(b) Biblical references	171



I am also grateful to the B.B.C. for lending me a colour transparency of my Queen of Sheba picture of which they took a photograph for one of their programmes in the 'Chronicle' series.

E. U.

December 1967

## CONTENTS

PREFACE	vii
LIST OF PLATES	xi
ABBREVIATIONS	xiii
INTRODUCTION	i
The Ethiopian scene: the Biblical setting (1) Biblical references to Ethiopia (5) Historical background (15)	
I. BIBLE TRANSLATIONS	31
General considerations (31) Time, authorship, and <i>Vorlage</i> of Ethiopic translations (36) Tentative conclusions (55) Bible translations into some modern Ethiopian languages (62)	
II. THE IMPACT OF THE OLD TESTAMENT	73
Introductory (73) The <i>Kebra Nagast</i> (74) Magic (79) The Ark of the Covenant (82) Church Building (87) Music (89) Liturgy (97) Dietary Prescriptions (100) Ritual Cleanliness (104) Circumcision (105) Sabbath Observance (109) Concluding Observations (113) Excursus on the Falashas (115)	
EXCURSUS ON THE LINGUISTIC FACTORS	
Introductory (119) Hebrew and Aramaic loanwords in Ge'ez (120) The contribution of Ethiopic to Old Testament lexicography (125)	
III. THE QUEEN OF SHEBA	131
Sacral kingship (131) The Old Testament story (132) New Testament references (134) Josephus and the Talmud (135) Islamic sources (136) Midrashic material (138) The Ethiopian version (139) European literature and art (143)	
BIBLIOGRAPHY	146
INDEXES	
(a) General	161
(b) Biblical references	171



## LIST OF PLATES

- I. The traditional representation of the Queen of Sheba story *frontispiece*
- II. (a) Tankwas or papyrus boats *facing p. 6*  
(b) The Blue Nile or Abbay
- III. (a) Priest reading from the Bible *facing p. 98*  
(b) Traditional Court Scene



# LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

ANET	<i>Ancient Near Eastern Texts</i> (ed. Pritchard).
B. & F.B.S.	British & Foreign Bible Society.
Bi Or	<i>Bibliotheca Orientalis</i> .
B.M.	British Museum.
B.N.	Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris.
BSOAS	<i>Bulletin of the School of Oriental &amp; African Studies</i> .
C.I.H.	<i>Corpus Inscriptionum Himyariticarum</i> .
C.S.C.O.	<i>Corpus Scriptorum Christianorum Orientalium</i> .
E. of I.	<i>Encyclopaedia of Islam</i> .
E.O.T.	Ethiopic Old Testament.
ESA	Epigraphic South Arabian.
GGA	<i>Göttingische Gelehrte Anzeigen</i> .
GLECS	<i>Groupe Linguistique d'Études Chamito-Sémitiques</i> .
I.C.C.	<i>International Critical Commentary</i> .
JA	<i>Journal Asiatique</i> .
JES	<i>Journal of Ethiopian Studies</i> .
JQR	<i>Jewish Quarterly Review</i> .
JRAS	<i>Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society</i> .
JSS	<i>Journal of Semitic Studies</i> .
JTS	<i>Journal of Theological Studies</i> .
MO	<i>Monde Oriental</i> .
MRAL	<i>Memorie, Regia Accademia dei Lincei</i> .
OLZ	<i>Orientalistische Literaturzeitung</i> .
OM	<i>Oriente Moderno</i> .
RRAL	<i>Rendiconti, Regia Accademia dei Lincei</i> .
RSE	<i>Rassegna di Studi Etiopici</i> .
RSO	<i>Rivista degli Studi Orientali</i> .
Tña	<i>ṭəgrāḥā</i> .
ZA	<i>Zeitschrift für Assyriologie</i> .
ZAW	<i>Zeitschrift für Alttestamentliche Wissenschaft</i> .
ZDMG	<i>Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft</i> .



## INTRODUCTION

### *The Ethiopian scene: the Biblical setting*

WHILE recent political events and decisions have placed Ethiopia firmly within her geographical setting, the continent of Africa, her traditional historical role—extending over two millennia or more—had made her a bridge between the civilizations of Africa and Asia. Many of her inhabitants were migrants from South Arabia who had introduced their language, their writing system (which underwent, however, material alterations on the western side of the Red Sea), and other vital facets of their cultural inheritance. With her ancestry across two continents and her commanding position in the horn of Africa, Ethiopia has always occupied a favoured place at a crossroad of civilizations and a meeting point of many races and influences. Jerusalem became as vital as Aksum in Ethiopian national consciousness, and the religion that had sprung from Mecca has exerted a more than intermittent pressure on the creed of Alexandria which is so deeply rooted in the realm of Prester John.<sup>1</sup>

Ethiopia—more than four times the size of Great Britain—is a country of great natural beauty, marked by a vast mountain massif with a mean height of some 8,000 feet.<sup>2</sup> These highlands rise from the torrid plains, abruptly and almost perpendicularly, and the steep escarpment has had a profound influence on the course of Ethiopian history: it has attracted Semitic immigrants from South Arabia, deterred the would-be conqueror, and preserved a civilization of Biblical hue in a cocoon of archaic and antique style. It has also for many centuries enabled the people to live in isolation from the outside world and to stem the onslaught of advancing Islam. The abruptness of the physical contours is reflected in astonishing contrasts of climate within a distance of a few miles and in linguistic barriers of unpromising incisiveness.

This great massif is cleft, in a direction from north-east to south-west, by the rift valley—that enormous geological depression which extends northwards from the fault zone of the Red Sea towards the Dead Sea and the Jordan valley and is marked, in Ethiopia, by the Dankali depression and the deep trench

<sup>1</sup> For a masterly study of the ramifications of this mythical concept cf. G. F. Beckingham's Inaugural Lecture *The Achievements of Prester John*, S.O.A.S., 1966.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. my *The Ethiopians*, 2nd ed., O.U.P., 1965.



which cuts the plateau along the course of the Awash river and the group of large lakes in south-west Ethiopia.<sup>1</sup> To the west of these mountain ranges lies the immense valley of the Nile and its tributaries which is fed, in part, by the romantic Abbay (or Blue Nile), winding its tortuous course to and from Lake Tana, and by the torrential rains which, from June to September, gush down the mountains as mighty rivers.

The Abbay or Blue Nile plays a profoundly important part in Ethiopian life and history. To Ethiopians it is the Gihon of Genesis 2: 13 ('and the name of the second river is Gihon: the one that compasseth the whole land of Ethiopia [Cush]'); and to this day the Nile springs are called Giyon,<sup>2</sup> i.e. Ethiopic for Gihon. There is no valid reason to doubt the essential accuracy of this identification;<sup>3</sup> in Jeremiah 2: 18 Shihor, the river of Egypt, is rendered as *Γήων* by the Septuagint; in Ben Sira 24: 27 Gihon appears in parallelism to the Nile;<sup>4</sup> cf. also Jubilees 8: 15 and 23,<sup>5</sup> as well as Josephus, *Antiquities*, i. 1, 3.<sup>6</sup> The secret of the Nile's source had roused the passionate curiosity of men, from Alexander the Great and Julius Caesar to James Bruce and, in our own day, R. E. Cheesman<sup>7</sup> who has made a most able survey of the area.

A recent student of Ethiopia<sup>8</sup> has told us how he has been seduced by the charm of traditional Ethiopian life: 'Played out by an extraordinarily handsome people in a setting of great natural beauty and a climate often called "idyllic", it offers a gate through time to a state of being that is richly medieval'—or, one may add, full of the flavour of Old Testament times. For outside the bustling modern towns Ethiopia remains a haven of peace where priests are dancing before the ark and the courtesies of the ancient Orient continue to live.<sup>9</sup> The scene of David and

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Reale Società Geogr. Ital., *L'Africa Orientale*, p. 116; W. B. Fisher, *The Middle East*, pp. 14 ff.; U.S. Army, *Area Handbook for Ethiopia*, p. 46.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Cheesman, *Lake Tana and the Blue Nile*, London, 1936, pp. 71 and 75.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Skinner, *Genesis*, ad locum (L.C.C., 2nd ed.).

<sup>4</sup> *חִיְיֹן כְּנָהַר הַיָּרְדֵּן* (M. Z. Segal, *Ben Sira* [in Hebrew], Jerusalem, 1953, p. 146).

<sup>5</sup> Chavara, *The Ethiopic Version of the Hebrew Book of Jubilees*, Oxford, 1893, pp. 32-33; *אֲחִיָּהּ: יְהוֹרֵה: זִיָּה: לֵאמֹר* (Jubiles: 1902), p. 71.

<sup>6</sup> 'and Gihon runs through Egypt, and denotes what arises from the east, which the Greeks call Nile' (in W. Whiston's translation, London, 1841, p. 33).

<sup>7</sup> Op. cit.

<sup>8</sup> D. N. Levine, *Wax and Gold*, University of Chicago Press, 1965, p. vii.

<sup>9</sup> 'It will always be the Emperor Haile Selassie's greatest glory that he has been able to bring these two worlds into harmony: gently to restrain the impatient and quietly to urge on the tardy, to preserve and also to discard without loss of Ethiopia's ancient and historic identity' (Ullendorff, *The Ethiopians*, p. 208). As time goes on, it will become increasingly

all the house of Israel playing before the Lord on harps and lyres, drums and sistra, dancing with all their might, and bringing up the ark with shouting and the sound of the trumpet<sup>1</sup> is a spectacle that is eminently alive in Ethiopia and can be seen each year at Timqat<sup>2</sup> and on many other occasions.

The Biblical atmosphere manifests itself in Ethiopia not only in attitudes, beliefs, and a general quality of life that is forcefully reminiscent of the Old Testament world, but it is also expressed in numerous more tangible ways: the council of elders resolving a dispute, sitting by the gate or under a tree in the field, reminds one of the scene in Deuteronomy 25: 7-9 or Ruth 4: 2 ('then the elders of the city shall call him and speak unto him' or 'he took ten men of the elders of the city and said, Sit ye down here [by the gate]'). An Ethiopian notable's stately progress, in the cold mist of dawn, on ass or mule, accompanied by his retainers, is precisely as described in Genesis 22: 3 ('and Abraham rose up early in the morning and saddled his ass and took two of his young men with him, and Isaac his son . . .'). And David with his harp or lyre differs little from the Ethiopian minstrel playing on instruments that have scarcely changed since the days when Saul's spirit needed to be soothed.<sup>3</sup> Who can fail to think, when watching an Ethiopian child washing the feet of his father's guest, of the similar scene when Abraham received the three men,<sup>4</sup> or the woman washing Jesus' feet,<sup>5</sup> or he himself those of his disciples?<sup>6</sup> The dignity of the bow, so vividly described in Genesis 33: 6-7 when Jacob's wives and handmaidens and children bowed to Esau,<sup>7</sup> is a daily occurrence of touching spontaneity in contemporary Ethiopia.

The people who inhabit this beautiful land and who consider themselves the lawful successors of Israel<sup>8</sup> have been established in the horn of Africa for several millennia and constitute an amalgam of Hamites, Semites, and Nilotic groups. Whether the Cushitic (i.e. Hamitic Ethiopian) peoples originally came from southern Arabia, whence the Hamito-Semites may have sprung,<sup>9</sup> or whether the cradle of the once united Hamito-Semitic race

difficult to maintain this judgement (first expressed in 1958) as the strains and pressures of modern life and social upheaval begin to impinge even on the traditional framework of Ethiopian society.

<sup>1</sup> See 2 Sam. 6: 5, 14-16.

<sup>2</sup> i.e. Epiphany; cf. H. M. Hyatt, *The Church of Abyssinia*, pp. 169 ff.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. 1 Sam. 16: 16, 23, 2 Kings 3: 15.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Luke 7: 38.

<sup>5</sup> Or Ruth to Boaz: 'she fell on her face and bowed herself to the ground' (Ruth 2: 10).

<sup>6</sup> *Kebra Nagast*, chaps. 45, 50, 53, 60, cf. *passim*. Conti Rossini, *Liber Aeonius*, C.S.C.O., 1909, p. 72. See also below, p. 31 (Ga'as passage).

<sup>7</sup> Cf. Hitti, *History of the Arabs* (1949), pp. 10 ff.

<sup>8</sup> Cf. Gen. 18: 4.

<sup>9</sup> Cf. John 13: 5.



was—as some scholars have conjectured—in that part of Africa<sup>1</sup> which is now called Ethiopia, need not concern us at present. In any event, the prolonged influx of Semitic elements from south-west Arabia, in pre-Christian centuries and later, has once again brought about a union of Hamites and Semites. The stage is the Abyssinian plateau where the result of this renewed fusion has been the emergence of the Hamites as the predominant ethnic factor and of the Semites as the principal linguistic and cultural element.

Physically, the Hamito-Semitic union has produced a handsome race, elegant, subtle, and nervous. Most travellers and observers have gained the impression that Ethiopians are exceptionally intelligent, mentally agile, and quick to absorb knowledge. They are proud, yet courteous, and good manners are highly esteemed; they are also accomplished diplomats, perhaps somewhat suspicious, but generous and uncalculating. Ethiopians are given to litigiousness, but their sense of honour and justice is satisfied once the matter has been argued out at length; they will present a case with great dexterity and a distinct flair for oratory. Their hospitality retains something of a Biblical and patriarchal flavour; and few of those who have savoured it have been able to resist their exquisite sense of humour and their compelling charm.

Nobody quite knows how many people there are within the boundaries of the Ethiopian empire. Since no properly controlled census has ever been undertaken, all population figures are bound to be estimates. In 1936, *L'Africa Orientale*<sup>2</sup> thought that 6–7 millions was a realistic guess, while the figure in the *Guida dell'Africa Orientale* (p. 82) is 7½ million. The 1954 Ethiopian *Guide Book*<sup>3</sup> contains an estimate of just under 17 millions, and the U.S. Army *Area Handbook* considers a total of 21 millions 'far beyond all competent estimates' (p. 53). The Ethiopian geographer, Ato Mesfin Walda Maryam, in a carefully documented study,<sup>4</sup> has convinced me that previous guesses<sup>5</sup> ranging between 10 and 15 millions were too low and failed to take account of the modern growth-rate which Ato Mesfin assumes to be at least 2 per cent. I am not competent to judge whether his own estimate of close on 25 millions (in 1961) is not slightly excessive. At any rate, Ethiopia ranks after Nigeria and Egypt as the most populous state in Africa.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Nöldeke, *Semitic Languages in Enyel. Brit.*, xlv. 680; Skinner, *Genesis*, pp. 801 and 807.  
<sup>2</sup> Issued by the Ethiopian Chamber of Commerce.  
<sup>3</sup> *Ethiopia Observer*, 7, 2, pp. 135–42.  
<sup>4</sup> Including my own (*The Ethiopians*, p. 32).

### *Biblical references to Ethiopia*

In assessing the significance of Biblical references to Ethiopia one has to bear in mind that the Hebrew 'Cush', which has been rendered by the Septuagint as *Aithiopia*,<sup>1</sup> lacks any precise connotation. Moreover, many of the scriptural references are of difficult interpretation. The same is very largely true of classical writers as well: thus Homer speaks (*Odyssey*, i. 22 ff.) of 'the distant Ethiopians, the farthest outposts of mankind, half of whom live where the Sun goes down, and half where he rises'. This division into eastern and western Ethiopians probably indicates that the name *Aithiopes*<sup>2</sup> referred to all peoples of dark skin, from the country south of Egypt, Nubia, to India.<sup>3</sup> Herodotus is at times a good deal more precise, for he clearly identifies Ethiopia with the kingdom of Meroe, Nubia: 'Ethiopians inhabit the country immediately above Elephantine, and one half of the island; the other half is inhabited by Egyptians; . . . finally, you will arrive at a large city called Meroe: this city is said to be the capital of all Ethiopia.'<sup>4</sup>

It is clear, therefore, that the Biblical 'Cush' is a vague term connoting the entire Nile Valley, south of Egypt, including Nubia and Abyssinia.<sup>5</sup> מִקְדוֹן וְעַד כּוּשׁ (*Esther* 1: 1) describes the utmost limits of the world. We have already discussed<sup>6</sup> the river Gihon which 'compasseth the whole land of Ethiopia' (*Gen.* 2: 13), an apt description of the Nile's course in Meroe and Abyssinia. The genealogical table (*Gen.* 10: 6–8) is of the utmost importance, but the confusion it induces and the problems it poses seem wellnigh incapable of solution: the sons of Ham are Cush<sup>7</sup> and Mizraim, Phut and Canaan; and the sons of Cush are Seba, Havilah, Sabtah, Raamah, and Sabtecha; and the sons of Raamah are Sheba and Dedan. And Cush also begat Nimrod.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> On two occasions (*Ps.* 72: 9 and 74: 14) *Aithiopes* appears as a translation of אֲשִׁיט.  
<sup>2</sup> This word is usually explained as *aithos* and *ēph* (Liddell and Scott or W. Max Müller, *Aithiopes*, Leipzig, 1904, p. 4) 'burnt face', but it might also be derived from *aithōs* which means 'sparkling, brilliant'; and Conti Rossini (*Storia d'Etiopia*, p. 26) renders this as 'dal viso ardente, rilucente'. *aithōs* is also 'red, fiery' and might be compared to Amharic *qay* 'red' where 'questa, nel linguaggio corrente, è il colore degli Abissini, opposto a *qayr* colore dei negri, Sciagalla, ecc.' (Suppl. to Cusi's *Vocabolario Amharico*, col. 75).

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Herodotus ii. 29.  
<sup>4</sup> Cf. Herodotus vii. 70.  
<sup>5</sup> For the distinction between 'Ethiopia' and 'Abyssinia', see my *Semitic Languages of Ethiopia*, p. 4. Cf. also Glaser, *Abyssinians in Arabian and Africa*, pp. 6 ff.

<sup>6</sup> p. 2, above.  
<sup>7</sup> Instead of the usual *Aithiopes*, the Septuagint here renders 'Cush' as *Xous*.  
<sup>8</sup> In the 'Testament of Naphtali' the Lord commanded Michael and the seventy angels to teach the seventy languages to mankind. Then spoke Nimrod the wicked: 'In my eyes there is none greater than he who taught me the language of Cush' (cf. *Testament of Naphtali* in Ginsberg, *Legends of the Jews*, ii. 215; Charles, *Pseudepigrapha*, p. 363).  
 For Nimrod as the offspring of Cush, cf. Skinner, *Genesis*, pp. 207 ff.



Of the two sets of names mentioned as Ham's progeny, each reads from south to north (Cush and Egypt; Phut and Canaan). Phut = Punt is probably the Somali coast,<sup>1</sup> and Canaan is the only non-African location cited. The sons of Cush all appear to be situated in Asia; no doubt the compiler of the table believed these Arabian peoples either to be of African descent (or migration) or to be under African dominion—by no means an extravagantly eccentric suggestion. By far the best known of these names are Sheba and Dedan;<sup>2</sup> the literature on Sheba and the Sabaeans is too extensive to be quoted here,<sup>3</sup> while Dedan has been generally associated with el-'Ulā in the northern Hedjāz.<sup>4</sup>

There are several places in the Old Testament where Cush is mentioned as the border region south of Egypt: 'from Migdol to Aswan up to the border of Ethiopia' (Ezek. 29: 10); 'Ethiopia was strong and Egypt without end . . .' (Nahum 3: 9). The messengers who were sent to frighten Ethiopia travel in ships (Ezek. 30: 9), an obvious allusion to navigation on the upper Nile. The rivers of Ethiopia are also referred to in Isaiah 18: 1: 'a land . . . which is beyond the rivers of Ethiopia.'<sup>5</sup> No doubt we have to think here of the White and Blue Niles and the Atbara. The papyrus boats, mentioned in Isaiah 18: 2, can be seen in Ethiopia to this day, especially on Lake Tana.<sup>6</sup>

The prophet Isaiah refers to 'Cush' on a number of other occasions as well: the Lord promises to recover the remnant of his people from various countries of the diaspora, among them Egypt, Upper Egypt (Pathros), and Cush (Isaiah 11: 11);<sup>7</sup> the placing of Cush within the setting of this verse fixes its geographical position south of Upper Egypt. The same is true of Isaiah 43: 3, where God is ready to offer the richest and furthest countries (among them Ethiopia, Egypt, and Seba) as ransom for Israel, or of Isaiah 45: 14 where the labour of Egypt and the trade of Ethiopians and of Sabaeans appear in juxtaposition. In Isaiah 20: 3-5, in the prophecy on Egypt and Ethiopia, we hear

<sup>1</sup> See *The Ethiopians*, p. 47; F. Hommel, *Ethnologie und Geographie des Alten Orients*, pp. 634-635; Breasted, *History of Egypt*, pp. 127, 128.

<sup>2</sup> For the other names, see the detailed discussion in Skinner, *Genesis*, pp. 200 ff.; also Hommel, *op. cit.*, index; and H. v. Wissmann, *Zur Geschichte und Landeskunde von Alt-Südarabien*, index.

<sup>3</sup> See H. v. Wissmann and M. Höfner, *Zur hist. Geogr. d. israelit. Südarabien*, p. 109 ff. passim.

<sup>4</sup> See especially Albright's article 'Dedan' in the *Albrecht Alt Festschrift (Geschichte und Alter Testament)*, Tübingen, 1953.

<sup>5</sup> The same expression also occurs in Zeph. 3: 10.—The other reference to Ethiopia in Zephaniah (2: 12) yields nothing of any particular interest ('Ethiopians slain by my sword').

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Cheesman, *op. cit.*, pp. 90 ff. For the tankwa 'papyrus boat' see p. 111 in Urán's *Athiopien*. Cf. Plate II.

<sup>7</sup> Ethiopia as a seat of a Jewish diaspora may also be the background to Ps. 87: 4 (see below).

## PLATE II

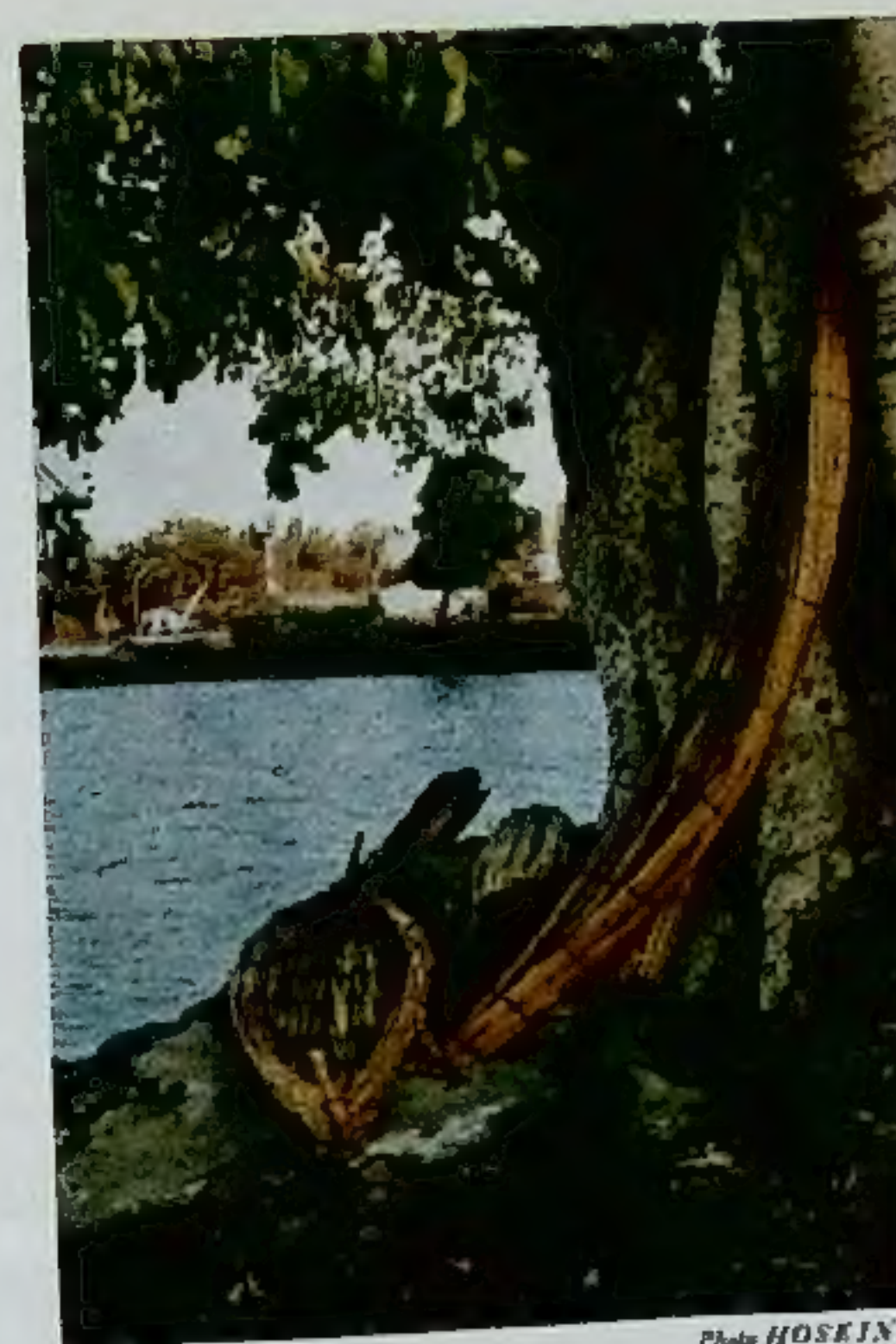


Photo HOSKING  
Tankwas or papyrus boats  
(see p. 15)



Photo BECKINGHAM  
The Blue Nile or Abbay  
(see pp. 2, 3, 6)



of the Egyptians being led away as prisoners and the Ethiopians as captives;<sup>1</sup> and Isaiah 37: 9 (= 2 Kings 19: 9) gives Tirhaqa as the name of מלך כוש (LXX: *θαράκα βασιλεὺς Αἰθιοπῶν*). He is Taharqa of the 25th (Ethiopian) dynasty who was defeated by Sennacherib during the latter's campaign against Judaea.<sup>2</sup>

Jeremiah 46: 9 speaks of 'the mighty men, Ethiopia and Pu[n]t who handle the shield'. That the Ethiopians were dark-skinned was well known to Jeremiah: 'Can the Ethiopian change his skin?' (13: 23). And Ebed-Melech, the Ethiopian<sup>3</sup> eunuch, was the man at whose intercession Jeremiah was released from the pit (38: 7, 10, 12) and who was promised deliverance from the fate that was to befall the city (39: 16-18). Dark-skinned Ethiopians are thus shown to have been in the service of King Zedekiah; Ebed-Melech himself must have attained a fairly senior position at court, for otherwise he would have been unlikely to have had such ready access to the person of the king (38: 8-10).

Ezekiel warns of 'the sword that shall come upon Egypt and the anguish that will be in Ethiopia' (30: 4); and in the following verse he enumerates Egypt's provinces and allies, in order to picture the approaching disaster in all its magnitude: 'Ethiopia and Pu[n]t and Lydia and all the mingled people.'<sup>4</sup> From most of these references there emerges a fairly stable idea of Cush as a country commonly bracketed with Egypt (and situated to the south of it) or the north-east African littoral. In Psalm 87: 4 we would appear to have a hint<sup>5</sup> to a number of centres with sizeable Jewish colonies: Rahab (an emblematic name of Egypt), Babylon, Philistia, Tyre, and Ethiopia.<sup>6</sup>

Egypt, with Libya in the west and Ethiopia in the south, is also mentioned in Daniel 11: 43, 2 Chronicles 12: 3 and 16: 8.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Breasted, *op. cit.*, p. 551.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. TIRHAKAH in Hastings's *Dictionary of the Bible*, and Breasted, *op. cit.*, pp. 552 ff.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. the discussion in Talmud *Abot* ed. Hagan 16b dealing with Ethiopians and dark-skinned people.

Ebed-Melech is called Ethiopian, i.e. black, antiphrastically, because he was the only white, i.e. pious, man at the court of King Zedekiah (Ginsberg, *Legends of the Jews*, vi. 412).

<sup>4</sup> While the Septuagint has *Aithiopia* in Ezek. 30: 4 and 9, in v. 5 *Ἰνδοί* appear, oddly enough, as *Ἰνδοί καὶ Κρήτες καὶ Αὐδαί*. This may well be an echo of the similar text in Ezek. 27: 10. It is, however, interesting to note that the Ethiopic version—in contrast to the LXX—follows the text of the Hebrew original in this particular detail (as is also the case with the Peshitta). This is an aspect deserving of consideration when we come to discuss the *Verlage* of the Ethiopic Bible text (Chapter I).

In Ezek. 38: 5 we have 'Persia, Ethiopia, and Pu[n]t'; there appears to be some confusion, therefore, in the geographical distribution of these peoples as between Ezek. 27: 10, 30: 5, and 38: 5.

<sup>5</sup> According to Duhm (*Mardi's Hand-Commentar*), ad loc.

<sup>6</sup> The Hebrew *כוש וצפון* was understood by the LXX (and E.O.T.) as *כוש וצפון*.



Although the reference in 2 Chronicles 21: 16<sup>1</sup> to a (South) Arabian military campaign against Judah presents historical and geographical difficulties, the very mention of הערבים אשר על יד כושׁים is of the greatest interest, for it shows the close proximity between the South Arabians and Ethiopians and might well be an early pointer to South Arabian migrations to Ethiopia.

The 'topaz of Ethiopia' (Job 28: 19) is the yellow topaz found on the islands of the Red Sea; this has to be read in conjunction with naval expeditions to Ophir, the gold-producing country,<sup>2</sup> which has probably to be sought either somewhere in South Arabia or along the Somali coast (1 Kings 9: 27-28). In 2 Samuel 18: 21 ff. we are told about an Ethiopian servant employed by King David; he was clearly in a much less senior position than Ebed-Melech under Zedekiah (see above), for he is simply referred to as הַכּוֹשׁ.<sup>3</sup> This appellation would suggest that he was the only one thus employed at that particular time.

One of the most famous Ethiopian references in the Old Testament is, of course, in Numbers 12: 1 where Miriam and Aaron speak against Moses because of the **האשה הכשית** whom he had taken. Jewish commentators, since the days of the Targum, have been embarrassed by the obvious interpretation that Moses had married an Ethiopian slave-girl. Some have argued (and so have some modern exegetes) that 'Ethiopian, Cushite' is a blanket term that might well have been applied to Zipporah, the Midianite (i.e. North Arabian), but it seems very unlikely that this explanation would satisfactorily account for the indignation expressed by Miriam and Aaron. The Targum renders the 'offending' words **אתחא שפירתא** 'a beautiful woman' which is based on an ancient Gematria<sup>5</sup> of **כושית** and **מראה** (each producing 736 in numerical value).<sup>6</sup>

The prophet Amos explains in chapter 9: 7 that God did not only bring up Israel out of Egypt but was equally concerned in

\* Cf. also 2 Chron. 14. 8, 11, 12.  
I cannot remember...

I cannot agree with M. Rodinson (B. *Or*, 1964, p. 239, 1st col.) that "il n'y a rien à tirer du texte... fort inutile". The inferences seem to me patent and clear, and the lateness of the text allusion to the geographical and historical situation.

<sup>1</sup> It is obvious that in v. 21b we should read מִלְכָּם (p. 182).

<sup>2</sup> It is obvious that in v. 21b we should read *וְהָיָה* in connection with the word in this chapter. The

\* LXX: *Alidmoss*; E.O.T.: *Alidmoss* #

elaborations on the theme set below, pp. 29 ff. <sup>1</sup> Cf. Rashi, ad loc.

other historical migrations. In fact, what reason was there to assume that Israel held any special position: 'Are ye not as the Ethiopians unto me?'<sup>1</sup> The climactic inference of these words can only be fully appreciated if the Ethiopians serve, in the present context, as the epitome of a far-distant, uncivilized, and despised black race.<sup>2</sup>

To conclude this survey of Old Testament references we must turn to Psalm 68: 32 which contains the much-quoted כֹּחַ יְהוָה יִשְׁלַח אֶת יָדוֹ וְיִקְרָא מִן הַשָּׁמַיִם וְיִשְׁלַח אֶת יָדוֹ וְיִקְרָא מִן הַשָּׁמַיִם. This is undoubtedly Ethiopia's favourite Bible quotation; it occurs twice in the *Kebra Nagast*<sup>5</sup> and is frequently used as a motto<sup>6</sup> or in heraldic devices in present-day Ethiopia. The Ethiopic and Greek texts are clear, but the Hebrew original is not without its textual problems.<sup>7</sup> 'Ethiopia stretching out her hands unto God' has become a proof-text and a symbol of the country's passionate adherence to the orthodox faith.

The principal New Testament reference occurs in Acts 8: 27, where we hear of 'a man of Ethiopia, an eunuch of great authority under Candace queen of the Ethiopians'. While there can scarcely be any doubt that the eunuch who was baptized by St. Philip must have been a servant of one of the Meroitic queens who bore the name Candace,<sup>8</sup> Ethiopians have, from a very early period, applied this episode to themselves and have identified Candace with the Queen of Sheba. In the New Testament there is, of course, no connexion between Candace and the 'Queen of the South'<sup>9</sup> (Matt. 12: 42; Luke 11: 31), but the *Kebra Nagast*<sup>10</sup> ('Glory of the Kings'—the Ethiopian national

• Ի՞նչ է Երվանդ Բ. Մեծը։ Մեծ թագավոր, Բագրատունիների ընտանիքից։

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Harper, *Ames and Howe* (I.C.C.), p. 193.

\* LXX and E.O.T. 67: 92.

\* Chapter 50 (end)

ՀԱՅԱՍՏԱՆԻ ՀԱՆՐԱՊԵՏՈՒԹՅԱՆ ԱՆՏՀԱՆՈՒԹՅԱՆ ԱՆՏԵՐՆԱԿԱՆ ԿԵՆՏՐՈՆԻ ՎԵՐԱԿԱՆԻՑՈՒՄԸ

ጥቅምት ፩፡ ይገኛል፡ በክብር

'Ethiopia will extend her hands to God and He will turn to her with honour.' The last part is, of course, an addition designed to underline the apocalypticness of the Biblical quotation. The text of the substantive part differs from the Ethiopic Old Testament and, indeed, from *Kebra Nagast*, chapter 13 (em); the text of the latter takes with E.O.T. Cf. Hubbard, *Kebra Nagast* (Ithaca, pp. 21-23).

<sup>4</sup> e.g. in leaflets dropped by the British and Ethiopian governments during the Ethiopian campaign in 1940/1.

campaign in 1940/1.  
 1. 35. *Debut* *Shalom* no. 250-2: *Calisto-Hartom, Psalm* (in Hebrew), p. 153.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Ullendorff, *New Testament Studies*, II (1955), 53.

\* *Sanctus* refers again to go back to a Semitic I

מלכת שבא

<sup>10</sup> Cf. Bodleian MS. Bruce 93 (= Dillmann, *Catalogue Cod. MSS. Bibl. Bodl. Oxon.*, Oxford, 1846, p. 131, no. 100). Cf. also Bodleian MS. Bruce 93 (= Dillmann, *Catalogue Cod. MSS. Bibl. Bodl. Oxon.*, Oxford, 1846, p. 131, no. 100).

184B, no. xiv), C. Bezold, *Zeits. Nagast*, Munich, 1905, E. A. W. Budge, *The Queen of Sheba*







*Vicit Leo de Tribu Juda; ut demonstrent, quod ex tribu Judae & stemmate Davidis oriundi sint.* . . .<sup>1</sup>

Rubenson argues,<sup>2</sup> rightly I believe, that the lion rampant, the Latin cross, and the Latin text in the blazon point to a European origin of this heraldic device. In any event, the use of the scriptural 'The Lion of the tribe of Judah hath prevailed' as a constituent part of the royal styles is of comparatively recent date.

References to Ethiopia in the Apocrypha and Pseudepigrapha of the Old Testament are of rather limited significance. They are generally of the same type as may be encountered in the Old Testament itself, i.e. allusions to the borders of Ethiopia south of Egypt, from India to Ethiopia, etc.<sup>3</sup> There are, however, one or two partial—and fairly interesting—exceptions: in the Sibylline Books we are told that the land of Gog and Magog is 'in the midst of the rivers of Ethiopia'.<sup>4</sup> This is, I believe, the only occurrence where Gog and Magog are located in Nubia-Abyssinia; as these adversaries of God and his Messiah are consigned to perdition, the 'rivers of Ethiopia' must represent a particularly remote and nasty location. The same thought is repeated, in a somewhat expanded form, in Sib. iii: 512-19 where Gog and Magog are cursed, together with many tribes who will fall and upon whom the Most High will send a grievous scourge. Among these peoples are 'Moors and Ethiopians and nations of barbarous speech'.<sup>5</sup> In Sib. v: 194 Syene (Aswan) shall be destroyed by 'an Ethiopian hero', yet in v: 206-13 the 'stout-hearted' Ethiopians and the 'whole land of the Ethiopians shall perish with fire and moanings'.

Turning to the Apocrypha of the New Testament, we find that additional colour is lent to the claim of Abyssinia as the first Christian nation by the narrative in the seventh book of the Apocryphal Acts of the Apostles, according to which Matthew baptized the king of Ethiopia. Matthew had arrived at Naddaver, the capital of Ethiopia, where King Aeglippus reigned and where magicians and charmed serpents held sway over the people. Matthew was welcomed by a eunuch named Candacis (*sic*), whom Philip had baptized, and succeeded in breaking the spell of the magicians and serpents. He baptized king, court,

<sup>1</sup> Cf. also Ludolf, *Conventarius*, pp. 531, 547.

<sup>2</sup> e.g. Judah 1: 10; Add. Esther B: 1, etc. Cf. Charles *Apocrypha and Pseudepigrapha* Index under 'Ethiopia'.

<sup>3</sup> Charles, *Pseudepigrapha*, The Sibylline Books, ii, 319-20.

<sup>4</sup> For a discussion of the speech of Ethiopia as the epitome of a barbarous language, see my paper 'C'est de l'éthiopien pour moi!' in the *Winton Thomas* issue of JRS 1968.

<sup>5</sup> Op. cit., p. 80.

and country, and the people built a large church in thirty days. Aeglippus was succeeded as king by his brother Hyrtacus who killed Matthew because he had refused to sanction Hyrtacus' marriage to Ephigenia, the daughter of Aeglippus.

The ascription by the Ethiopians of this apocryphal story to themselves is no doubt due to the ambiguity of the term 'Ethiopia', and is thus on a par with their appropriation of Candace queen of the Ethiopians. In fact, in this narrative of the Apocryphal Acts the names alone make it plain that the document cannot have referred to Abyssinia.<sup>1</sup>

Another apocryphal account, which relates to Matthew 2: 13 ff. and some of the Infancy Gospels, has gained some currency in Ethiopia. It is contained in the British Museum Ethiopic MS. Add. 16 193 (= Dillmann, B.M. *Catalogus*, xlii) and deals with the Flight of the Holy Family to Ethiopia. The sojourn in Ethiopia lasted for 3½ years, and during the return to Palestine the Virgin Mary wrought a large number of miracles. The compilation is of a complex character with a conflation of many disparate strands.<sup>2</sup>

Ethiopia also plays some part in the Midrashic elaborations of Rabbinical literature which continues and embroiders themes more or less tenuously touched upon in the Old Testament. The most detailed of these embellishments concerns the alleged sojourn in Ethiopia of Moses and his reign as king of that country.<sup>3</sup> The Biblical elements that were woven into this tale are derived from Moses' flight from Egypt (after he had slain the Egyptian overseer), the uncertainty about the location of Midian, and Moses' marriage to an Ethiopian woman. The Midrash relates that, when Moses escaped from the Egyptians, a war was raging between Ethiopia and the nations of the East. Moses appeared in the Ethiopian king's camp and found great favour with the king (named Kikanos) and his people. When the king died, the nobles made Moses king over them and gave him Adoniah, Kikanos' widow, as his wife and queen. Moses was victorious in all his campaigns, lifted the siege of the capital, and made the country prosper. He ruled over Ethiopia for

<sup>1</sup> This has already been pointed out by G. Conti Rossini, *Storia d'Etiopia*, p. 143. See also Dillmann, *Zur Gesch. d. Aem. Reichs*, pp. 4 ff.

<sup>2</sup> R. H. Emery has edited and annotated this manuscript, under my supervision, in a doctoral thesis accepted by St. Andrews University in 1959. A fresh study of this manuscript, based on the collation of manuscripts hitherto not considered, will shortly appear in a C.S.C.O. volume on the Flight of the Holy Family, edited by Ullendorff and Emery.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Tosafot Shemot*, an eleventh-century compilation of midrashim to the Pentateuch, Ginsberg, *Legends of the Jews*, ii, 283-9, and v, 407-10. See also, in a more general context, M. Abraham, *Legendes juives apocryphes sur la vie de Moïse*.



forty years, and in the 67th year of his life the time came to leave Ethiopia and to release Israel from Egypt.

Josephus<sup>1</sup> has a rather different account, though many details and stratagems used by Moses are identical in both versions. Here Moses is appointed commander of the Egyptian army when the country is invaded by the Ethiopians. His campaign against Ethiopia is successful—except that the capture of Saba ('which was a royal city of Ethiopia, which Cambyses afterwards named Meroe after the name of his own sister')<sup>2</sup> eludes him. However, Tharbis, the daughter of the Ethiopian king, falls passionately in love with Moses; he promises to marry her—provided she procures the surrender of the city. It is clear that the object of all these Midrashic embroideries is to explain Moses' union with an Ethiopian woman (Num. 12: 1).

A rather different subject is touched upon in the Talmudic discussion on the nations of the earth offering gifts to the Messiah.<sup>3</sup> Egypt's gifts will at first be rejected by the Messiah, but Ethiopia's offering will no doubt be accepted, for she was never Israel's taskmaster; and in her favour is also adduced the psalmist's *כֹּשׁ תָּרִץ יְדֵי לְאֻלֵּהִים* (Ps. 68: 32).—Eldad had-Dani reports that the Danites, prompted to leave Palestine, passed through Egypt and settled in Ethiopia where they slew many of the inhabitants and exacted tribute from the survivors.<sup>4</sup>

According to the *Targum Sheni* on Esther, Ahasuerus—who reigned 'from India unto Ethiopia'—had received coronation gifts from countries as far afield as Ethiopia<sup>5</sup> and Africa (*מִמְדִּינַת אֲפִרְיָקָה*). Elsewhere Ethiopia is described as 'the pearl of all countries'.<sup>6</sup> And because of the Ethiopians' fondness of Moses they accepted from him the custom of circumcision<sup>7</sup> which they have maintained to this day.

These quotations will suffice to demonstrate that Ethiopia-Cush makes a relatively modest appearance in Biblical literature (and in some of its immediate offshoots) and that the picture which emerges from this material is, even in its cumulative effect, rather blurred. It is not always clear what Biblical

<sup>1</sup> *Antiquities*, ii. 10 and 11.

<sup>2</sup> *Peakes*, 1184. Cf. also Ginsberg, *op. cit.* iii. 155-7.

<sup>3</sup> *Eldad had-Dani*, ed. Epstein, Frankfurt, 1891, pp. 85-86; cf. also Ginsberg, *op. cit.* iv. 182.

<sup>4</sup> *Targum Sheni* to *Esther*, *מִקְרָאֵת וְדִלְוִת*, Warsaw, 1874, part vi (חֲמֵשׁ מִצְרַיִם), p. 133a. col. 4 (top).

<sup>5</sup> *וְכֵן מִמְּדִינַת אֲפִרְיָקָה וְדִלְוִת לִי יָחַד מִן כֹּשׁ מִדִּינָה (בְּיָמָה קְדָמָה*

*דִּקְרִית בְּמִלְכֻתָּהּ)*  
'and fetch from there the sword and my coat of mail which they brought me from Ethiopia (on the day I ascended the throne).'

<sup>6</sup> See Ginsberg, *op. cit.* vi. 365.

<sup>7</sup> Ginsberg, *op. cit.* v. 407.

writers have in mind when they refer to Ethiopia; her location remains imprecise, and her people's characteristics vary from utter remoteness and awareness of their black skin to an innocent piety reaching out for God's mercy. Yet we cannot afford to neglect the historical crumbs and the legendary embellishments which this literature throws out. And furthermore: even if the Bible is not too generous in the space it allocates to Ethiopia, the latter's consciousness of the former is overwhelming and occupies a prominent part in the Ethiopian national scene and atmosphere.

#### Historical background

Old Testament influences and reflections had probably reached Ethiopia even before the introduction of Christianity in the fourth century and before the translation of the Bible.<sup>1</sup> Monophysite Christianity, once it had taken root, became not only the official religion of the Ethiopian empire but also the most profound expression of the national existence of the Ethiopians. In its peculiar indigenized form, impregnated with strong Hebrew and archaic Semitic elements as well as pagan residues, Abyssinian Christianity constitutes a store-house of the cultural, political, and social life of the people. In speaking of this distinctive conglomerate one has to bear in mind three major religious manifestations in Ethiopia—Judaism, paganism, and Islam—which are either genetic ingredients of Abyssinian Christianity or at least elements of a long historical symbiosis.

For a possible infiltration into pre-Christian Abyssinia of Jewish migrants from the north, from the direction of Egypt, we possess very scanty material only. Jeremiah (44: 1) speaks of Jews who had settled in Egypt, in the north (Migdol and

<sup>1</sup> M. Rodinson has recently subjected my views (expressed in 'Hebraic-Jewish elements in Abyssinian (monophysite) Christianity', *JSS* 1956, pp. 216-36, and in *The Ethiopians*) to a searching examination carried out with exceptional erudition and characteristic courtesy. It will not be possible, in the present context, to deal with these matters at length, but they will be briefly considered in Chapter II. If I understand M. Rodinson's position aright, it hinges on his doubts that Hebrew and Old Testament influences penetrated into Ethiopia before the introduction of Christianity. Such influences are, instead, due to an imitation of the *Antiquities* of Josephus, *parfois poussée jusqu'à l'identification avec Israël* (*JSS* 1964, p. 18, also *Is Or, au* (1964), 238-43). I can find no reason to question the *mitakha* Rodinson's views, I may well have underestimated the force and importance of the *mitakha* *Judaism at Vesteris Testament*, but I have made it plain that I was not thinking of an *imagined* *Judaism* (*JSS* 1964, p. 18) but of small groups not constituting a complete tribe, *gola* (*JSS* 1956, p. 229). I have also given repeated warnings of the extreme caution needed in the analysis of this problem (*ibid.*, pp. 216 and 229).

I should like to take this opportunity of thanking M. Rodinson for his extremely important and valuable criticisms which will have to be taken into consideration in any future discussion of this matter.



Tahpanhes) as well as in the south (Upper Egypt = Pathros). The prophet Zephaniah (seventh century B.C.) refers to a diaspora in Cush: 'From beyond the rivers of Cush my suppliants, my dispersed community, shall bring my offering' (Zeph. 3: 10). Verses 1 and 2 in chapter 18 of Isaiah seem to be based on the information of eye-witnesses, but the value of these scattered Old Testament verses is, nonetheless, limited—even though it seems reasonable to suppose that Jews had penetrated as far as Upper Egypt, Nubia, and possibly beyond. Herodotus (ii. 30) relates how certain Egyptian garrisons, after having been on duty at Elephantine for three years without being relieved, revolted against Psammetichus and went to Ethiopia. Even if this referred to the time of Psammetichus II (593–588 B.C.), it would clearly be too early to have any connexion with the Jewish military garrison at Elephantine of whom we hear in the Aramaic papyri of the fifth century B.C. It is, of course, conceivable that similar revolts and desertions occurred also under the Persian Government later on. Yet, neither do we possess any historical information about this nor is a desertion to Ethiopia (= Nubia) tantamount to the settlement of Jews in Abyssinia (= Ethiopia in its present connotation).

It must thus be realized that the frequently canvassed origin of the Falashas' from the Jewish garrison at Elephantine or the conjecture that Jewish influences in Abyssinia had penetrated by way of Egypt are devoid of any reliable historical basis.<sup>2</sup> It is mainly thanks to the deservedly great authority of Ignazio Guidi<sup>3</sup> that these views have received any serious consideration. Not only do they remain entirely within the realm of pure conjecture, but there are a number of facts which militate against their acceptance. Conti Rossini<sup>4</sup> has suggested that the Judaism professed by the military garrison diverges considerably from such Jewish forms as have been preserved in Ethiopia. There is no mention of the Sabbath in the Elephantine papyri,<sup>5</sup> and the only feast specifically referred to is the festival of Unleavened Bread. Members of the Jewish military garrison at Elephantine intermarried with their neighbours (document no. 14) and appear to have lived on equal terms with them. Such aspects of Elephantine religious life as emerge from the papyri

<sup>2</sup> See excursus on the Falashas—appended to Chapter II.  
<sup>3</sup> My views on this subject are shared by M. Rodinson, *JSS* 1964, p. 26.  
<sup>4</sup> [Brevi] *Storia della letteratura etiopica*, p. 92, note 2.  
<sup>5</sup> *Storia d'Etiopia*, p. 144.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. A. Cowley, *Aramaic Papyri of the Fifth Century B.C.*, pp. xvii ff.; R. Yaron, *The Late of the Elephantine Documents* (in Hebrew), Jerusalem, 1961.

are in sharp contrast to the entire cast of religious expression among the Falashas in particular and the Judaizing trends of the Abyssinian Church in general. This estimate remains true even when the fullest allowances are made for the inevitable deficiencies in our knowledge of the Elephantine community.

The position is different with regard to Jewish and Old Testament influences that may have entered Abyssinia via South Arabia:<sup>1</sup> the source material here is a good deal ampler, and the evidence for migratory movements across the Red Sea is indisputable.<sup>2</sup> The Hebrew Bible abounds, of course, in direct or indirect references to ערבים, ערביים, ישמעאליים, etc.; and the desert origin of the Hebrews points in the same direction. Solomon and his successors had an outlet to the Red Sea at Elath (= 'Aqabah, 2 Kings 14: 22; 16: 6), and we have already alluded to naval expeditions to Ophir (p. 8, above). While none of the Biblical references reveals any intimate and detailed knowledge of Arabia, and South Arabia in particular, they nevertheless give an indication of Jewish contacts with that country. Three of the South Arabian kingdoms occur in the Old Testament: Saba (Gen. 10: 7 and other places), Ma'in (1 Chron. 4: 41), Hadramawt (Gen. 10: 26).

In Rabbinical literature there are a few references to Jewish connexions with Arabia. In Midrash *Bemidbar Rabba* ix we hear that . . . שאל מלך ערביים את רבי עקיבא אני כושי ואשתי כושית. The date (about A.D. 130) is given by the mention of R. 'Aqiba. The fact that this 'King of the Arabs' was black (an Ethiopian) clearly shows that R. 'Aqiba must have travelled as far as South Arabia.<sup>4</sup> The passage also reveals, incidentally, that an Ethiopian prince or kinglet ruled at that time over at least a province of South Arabia. In the days of R. 'Aqiba a sizeable Jewish community must already have existed in Arabia,<sup>5</sup> for otherwise it would scarcely have been worthwhile for R. 'Aqiba to undertake so arduous a journey, whose purpose presumably was to incite the Jews of Arabia to fight against Rome.<sup>6</sup> This is likely to be one of the first pieces of direct evidence for the

<sup>1</sup> See C. Rathjens, *Die Juden in Arabien*, esp. chap. 2; H. Z. Hirschberg, *ישראל בערב*, Tel Aviv, 1946, esp. chap. 4; Glasen, *Absessmer*, pp. 174 ff.  
<sup>2</sup> Cf. M. Hölzer, 'Über sprachl. u. kult. Bez. zw. Södarab. u. Äth. im Altertum' in *Ann. del. Congresso*, pp. 435 ff.

<sup>3</sup> M. Rodinson (*St. Or.*, 1964, p. 239) seems a trifle too categorical in rejecting this identification. Not only is there the evidence of the Septuagint and of the *Apoc.* of the Masoretic text, but the mention of similar South Arabian locations in the Old Testament affords this identification reasonable support. Cf. also Hirschberg, op. cit., p. 34.

<sup>4</sup> See also Hirschberg, op. cit., pp. 40, 280.  
<sup>5</sup> Cf. Hirschberg, op. cit., pp. 30 ff.  
<sup>6</sup> A reference to R. 'Aqiba's journey occurs also in Talmud Bab. *Rosh Hashanah* 28b.

<sup>6</sup> See also S. Krauss, *ZDAIG* 1916, p. 331.







was short-lived and came to an end with the Persian occupation of South Arabia at the end of the sixth century. The Roman-Persian antagonism found its reflection in the political-religious events in the Red Sea area: the Persians were anti-Christian because Christianity had become identified with Roman rule, and they encouraged all religious manifestations which might be instrumental in dislodging Roman influence. In this way the Jews as well as Christian sects hostile to Rome were favoured, but the Persian hegemony in Arabia soon disintegrated under the dynamic onslaught of nascent Islam.

The Jews, Jewish proselytes,<sup>1</sup> and Judaism were thus strongly entrenched in pre-Islamic Arabia and had come to play an increasingly important part in the religious and cultural life of the peninsula ever since the first century A.D. While it is undoubtedly true—as M. Rodinson has argued—that, after the adoption of Christianity, the Bible exerted a strongly imitative impact in Ethiopia, it is equally clear that many cultic, literary, and cultural facets cannot be ascribed to that *imitatio Veteris Testamenti* for the simple reason that they go back to extra-Biblical sources. Here we have to envisage aspects of Jewish lore which were assimilated in Ethiopia in much the same way as Hebraic and post-Biblical elements entered into Qur'an and Hadith, i.e. by living contact and direct communication. The meeting of both strands—the relatively early presence of small Jewish groups<sup>2</sup> (or even only individuals) in the Aksumite kingdom together with the later imitation of Israel and the Old Testament—eventually produced the complex and highly syncretistic Ethiopian civilization.

The penetration of Hebraic-Jewish elements from Arabia into Abyssinia will have to be visualized in a twofold manner:

(a) It has already been suggested that among the South

également répandus dans le Yémen; le premier grâce aux Israélites, très nombreux en Arabie, et le second grâce probablement aux missionnaires syriens monophysites, qui firent la persécution des empereurs grecs, à Négreet surtout, les chrétiens étaient nombreux.<sup>1</sup> An epigraphic hint to Jewish missionary zeal in pre-Islamic South Arabia may well be RHMN, we find the words *al-jahiliyya shama' al-islam* 'et que lui accorde le Dieu des chrétiens des enfants bien convertis, combattants pour la cause du Christ'. This is also Göttem's understanding of this passage (*Ha arsi*, loc. cit.).

The penetration of Judaism and Judaizing tendencies into Arabia reached at times astonishing proportions and was accompanied by forcible proselytizing activities (cf. Sidney Smith in *BJOAS* 1954, p. 462).

<sup>2</sup> See also Rodinson (1954, pp. 16-17). 'Le mode d'explication par une influence idéologique juive paraît solidement étayé. Elle ne semble pas dispenser de supposer la présence réelle d'un certain nombre de Juifs. C'est cette présence seule, semble-t-il, qui peut expliquer que des mots venus évidemment de l'hébreu ou du judéo-araméen aient été adoptés par le guize dans les traductions de la Bible...'

Arabian immigrants into the Aksumite empire there must have been some Jews.<sup>3</sup> This seems obvious when one considers the comparatively large number of Jews in Arabia and their distribution. It is not likely that they entered Abyssinia as a compact community, a complete tribal *golah*, but they probably came in small groups together with their non-Jewish fellow merchants and settlers. The diffusion of Judaizing practices and influences would suggest that they did not establish separate Jewish colonies on Abyssinian soil but mixed with other immigrants. I hope to be able to show below (excursus to Chapter II) that the Falashas, in their geographically circumscribed habitat, are unlikely to have any bearing on a solution of this question.

(b) There were, it appears, several military interventions by Habashat<sup>4</sup> in Arabia. They all occurred at a time when the Jewish impact on South Arabia was considerable. The last Abyssinian expedition in Arabia, which defeated Du Nuwas, took over the country from a Judaized king and a Judaized culture. It may be doubted that the process of Judaization had gone very deep, but it seems certain that Hebraic sediments, traditions, practices, and customs were subtly absorbed and, in due course, brought back—often in a much changed and adulterated form—across the Red Sea into Abyssinia.

South Arabia must thus be considered the principal avenue by which Jewish and early Biblical elements reached the kingdom of Aksum and gained admission in a variety of forms to be discussed in Chapter II. At the same time, it must be clearly understood that those elements bore a general Hebraic cast reflecting an early form of Judaism still fairly free from Talmudic accretions. That is, of course, to be expected when one recalls the early date of some Jewish migrations into Arabia, although we should not exclude either customs or literary

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Wellhausen, *Reise arabischen Heidentums*, p. 230. 'Im Südwesten der arabischen Halbinsel und im gegenüber liegenden Ostafrika hat das Judentum längere Zeit mit dem Christentum um die Herrschaft gekämpft. Zeitweilig hat es im Jaman den Sieg davon getragen; in Habesch hat es wenigstens starke Spuren an dem dort durchgedrungenen Christentum hinterlassen.'

<sup>2</sup> Conti Rossini 'Expéditions et possessions des Habshas en Arabie', *JA* 1921, pp. 35-36. See also A. F. L. Beeston's article *Abrasha* in *Encyclopaedia of Islam*. The views expressed by Conti Rossini (and, in his footsteps, by the present writer) have recently been subjected to severely critical scrutiny by A. J. Drewes, *Inscriptions de l'Éthiopie antique*, esp. chap. 1 and vi. Drewes argues with great knowledge and acumen, but as a person, at times inclined to throw out the baby with the bathwater. His great achievement is that everyone has been compelled to re-examine the linguistic and historical material ab initio. A. K. Irvine has also done so with regard to the identity of Habashat (785-1065 and *E. of I.* under *Habashat*) and has arrived at the conclusion that this name refers to a region (and not a people) and that there is insufficient evidence to connect it with a South Arabian tribe ('the equation of *ḥabsh* with Abyssinia is the most natural one').



allusions which later on appear in the literature of the Talmud. The period of Talmudic 'gestation' extends over several centuries, and we must therefore expect to find some of its ingredients among Jewish communities which were severed from the main stream of tradition before its committal to writing.<sup>1</sup>

It must not, of course, be supposed that Judaism was either the only or even the principal monotheistic religion in pre-Islamic Arabia. The great expansion of the monophysite (and, to a lesser extent, the Nestorian) church beyond the fringes of the desert brought Christianity right into the heart of Arabia.<sup>2</sup> The Syriac story of the Jacobite bishop Akhudemneh<sup>3</sup> shows the intense missionary endeavour of this monophysite zealot among many Arabian tribes. No less important were the religious activities of the monophysite kingdom of Ghassan (or of the Nestorians at Hīrah) who, by their numerous contacts with the large tribes of the interior of Arabia, contributed so notably to the diffusion of that type of Christianity over wide areas of the Arabian peninsula. The same form of Christianity was, of course, brought into Arabia not only by the Abyssinian conquerors, but also by the vigorous trade in Abyssinian slaves and by commercial relations in general. The importance of these commercial activities between the Quraysh and Abyssinia is attested in Ibn Hishām's recension of Ibn Ishāq's life of the Prophet.<sup>4</sup>

It must be appreciated that those forms of Judaism and Christianity which were found in south-west Arabia at that time were not only imbued with a markedly oriental ceremonial, but their general Semitic character, the circumstances of their development as well as their entire religious, historical, and emotional atmosphere, rendered them much closer and more akin to each other than is the case with their westernized counterparts. Monophysite Christianity had a distinctly Hebraic mould, while Judaism in Arabia, at that period, could not but reflect some of the imprint of the missionary zeal and vigour of

<sup>1</sup> The abundance of Jewish thought and ideas contained in the Koran and in its early authoritative commentaries testifies to the profound knowledge of Judaism possessed by Arabian Jews. They may even help us to restore some Aggadic concepts lost in the course of time and unknown to Jewish scholarship today, as well as to gain much-sought data about the life and practices of the Jews in Arabia. . . . The unusual number of Aggadic stories quoted in the writings of Zamakhshari, Bagdadi, Bokhari and Tabari testify to the fact that the Arabian Jews took an active part in Jewish spiritual life' (A. I. Katsh, *Judaism in Islam*, 1954, p. xxv).

<sup>2</sup> Cf. J. Nyckmans, *Le Christianisme, persan*; Wellhausen, *Reise*, pp. 230-4, and esp. p. 232.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. F. Nau's edition of the *Histoire de Akhudemneh* (*Patrologia Orientalis*, III, 1909).

<sup>4</sup> Cf. M. Guedi, *Storia e cultura*, p. 153, 8. South, *BSOAS* 1954, pp. 462-3.

early Christianity.<sup>1</sup> The pertinency of these considerations seems evident.

The cultural and historical affinity between the two shores of the Red Sea, brought about by intense commercial activities, had long been known in antiquity. It is implicit in the picture which emerges from the *Periplus Maris Erythraei*,<sup>2</sup> an anonymous second-century account of travel and trade in the Red Sea area. Here we hear of the famous harbour of Adulis, 'a fair-sized village', and here we also encounter what is probably the first reference to 'the city of the people called Auxumites'.<sup>3</sup> A far more detailed story is told by Cosmas Indicopleustes in his *Christian Topography*,<sup>4</sup> when he visited the kingdom of Aksum about the year A.D. 525, he found Adulis a flourishing port and in close commercial relations with Arabia and beyond: '... Ethiopia, though separated from Sheba by the Arabian gulf, lay in its vicinity. . . . For the Homerites are not far distant from Barbaria, as the sea which lies between them can be crossed in a couple of days. . . .'<sup>5</sup> In the Semitic culture which the immigrants from South Arabia had transplanted across the Red Sea into the Aksumite kingdom the Jewish ingredient must have been fairly prominent. That was due not only to the undoubted presence of some Jews and Jewish proselytes among the immigrant traders<sup>6</sup> and settlers, but also to the notable Hebraic-Jewish admixture in South Arabian civilization at that period.

For the history of the carriers of those influences we lack nearly all genuine and trustworthy source material. Generalizations of all sorts abound, but there is an almost complete absence of historical detail:

... il est incontestable qu'un fond de judaïsme est venu s'implanter dans le pays à une époque assez largement antérieure à l'introduction du christianisme, et que ce substratum hébraïque a laissé des traces profondes.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> M. Rodinson (*Bi Or*, 1964, p. 239, col. 8) has described the similar characterization, which I offered in *JSS* 1956, as generalizations and as such inadequate. It would be difficult to dissent from this verdict, yet it is, perhaps, a little harsh, for I still think that this paragraph describes the atmosphere in which these religious forms flourished in a manner that is recognizable and essentially true to reality—even though it is couched, inevitably, in impressionistic terms.

<sup>2</sup> Translated from the Greek and annotated by W. H. Schoff, 1912.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. p. 1, § 4.

<sup>4</sup> Translated from the Greek by J. W. McCrindle. Hakluyt Society, 1897.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. p. 32.

<sup>6</sup> 'Sembra anche assai probabile che il giudaismo sia stato portato in Etiopia (forse anche prima che vi si diffondesse il cristianesimo) da Ebrei mercantili d'Araba. . . .'<sup>7</sup> (Conti Rossini in *OM* 1901, p. 53; review of Rothstein's *Die Juden in Abessinien*).

<sup>7</sup> Karamanlidis, *Essai sur l'histoire antique d'Abessinie*, p. 23.



Littmann believes to have found<sup>1</sup> the title 'King of Zion' on Aksumite coins, and Kammerer thinks that this

impliquerait que, sous ce souverain déjà, la tradition de la reine de Saba et des très anciennes relations qui ont pu exister avec la capitale des Juifs, avait plus ou moins servi de base à l'introduction d'une religion nouvelle qu'on considérerait comme apparentée à la religion juive. . . .<sup>2</sup>

The absence of relevant and reliable historical sources is, however, compensated for, at least in part, by fairly numerous threads of indirect evidence which, in their cumulative effect, present an impressive array. The important linguistic factors will be reviewed in an excursus to Chapter II, while the main part of that chapter will be concerned with the cultural and religious elements. On the linguistic side it need only be observed here that some words and concepts must have been introduced by Judaized emigrants from Arabia at an early date, for they show Hebrew or Jewish-Aramaic forms and a specifically Jewish connotation.<sup>3</sup> Nöldeke has stated<sup>4</sup> that *maṣṣal* 'würde allein genügen, jüdischen religiösen Einfluß bei den alten Abessinern zu konstatieren'. Dillmann had already found:<sup>5</sup>

Ab Aramæis et Judæis Aramæice loquentibus ut Arabes ita Aethiopes multa nomina et verba, maxime quæ ad res sacras et literarias pertinent (plurima sine dubio jam eo tempore quo Arabia meridionali imperabant et cum Judæis Arabiae commercium habebant) adoptarunt.

And H. J. Polotsky has averred, apropos of this quotation, that 'nothing more sensible has ever been written on this subject'.<sup>6</sup> He has also endeavoured to dispose of the 'theory attempting to connect the Aramaic words and other Aramaic features with the Christianization of Ethiopia and with the translation of the Bible into Ethiopic'.<sup>7</sup> The linguistic and semantic evidence<sup>8</sup> thus clearly demonstrates that an *imitatio Veteris Testamenti* alone, without the presence of early Judaized nuclei, could not account for the historical and religious situation as it presents itself in subsequent centuries.

We shall later on (Chapter II) refer in some detail to Old Testament elements in Abyssinian life. The story of the Queen of Sheba (Chapter III), in all its manifold ramifications, has given rise to, or possibly provided the *ex post facto* rationale of such deeply rooted traditions as the Aaronite origin of the Aksumite clergy, the reference to Ethiopians as *däqqä 'asra'el*,

<sup>1</sup> *Aksum Expedition*, i. 50.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Conti Rossini, *Storia d'Etiopia*, p. 143; and Nöldeke, *Neue Beiträge*, pp. 32-46.

<sup>3</sup> *Op. cit.*, p. 36.

<sup>4</sup> For details see excursus to Chapter II, below.

<sup>5</sup> Kammerer, *op. cit.*, p. 86.

<sup>6</sup> *JSS* 1964, p. 4.

<sup>7</sup> *Ibid.*

and the consciousness of having inherited from Israel the legitimate claim to being regarded as the chosen people of God. It stands to reason that these and other traditions, in particular that of the Ark of the Covenant at Aksum, would have been an integral part of the Abyssinian national heritage before the introduction of Christianity in the fourth century. For it seems difficult to imagine that a people recently converted to Christianity (not by a Christian Jew, but by the Syrian missionary Frumentius) should *thereafter* have begun to boast of Jewish descent and to insist on Hebraic customs and institutions.

Rathjens has expressed the view<sup>1</sup> that after the introduction of Christianity into the Aksumite kingdom the Jews were probably subjected to severe persecutions. There exist, of course, no records to substantiate this opinion, but in view of the cherished descent from Israel and at least a measure of Judaization in pre-Christian Abyssinia one may well question the cogency of this conjecture. Moreover, it seems likely that many of the immigrant Judaic elements, spiritually isolated as they must have been, became voluntary adherents of Christianity. To what extent Abyssinian Christianity reacted, by way of local retaliation, against the anti-Christian excesses perpetrated by the Judaized Du Nuwās in South Arabia, it is impossible to determine. In any event, it appears probable that those Abyssinian Jews who had been converted to Christianity became the effective carriers of Hebraic elements, rites, and forms current in the Christian Church of Ethiopia.

We possess little direct information on Jews and Judaism in Abyssinia during the Middle Ages. The legend of the foundation of a Jewish dynasty by Judith, a 'Jewish' queen, was given currency by James Bruce,<sup>2</sup> and has been echoed by Rathjens<sup>3</sup> and others, but it has been shown by Conti Rossini to possess no basis in historical fact.<sup>4</sup> The narrative of the ninth-century Jewish traveller, Eldad had-Dani,<sup>5</sup> is more in the nature of a fanciful geographical tale, though it has exerted an enduring influence throughout the Middle Ages. His story of the Jewish kingdom 'beyond the rivers of Cush' is unlikely to relate to Ethiopia. His language reveals no traces of Ethiopic, nor does his narrative betray a first-hand knowledge of Abyssinia. He shows, however, more than a casual acquaintance with Arabia,

<sup>1</sup> *Juden in Abessinien*, p. 17.

<sup>2</sup> *Op. cit.*, pp. 18 ff.

<sup>3</sup> *Op. cit.*, p. 35.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. my article in the latest edition of the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*.

<sup>5</sup> For a detailed study see Conti Rossini's 'Leggende geografiche giudaiche del IX secolo (il Sefar Eldad)', in *Boll. d. R. Soc. Congr. Ital.* 1925, pp. 160-90.



and his Hebrew offers some evidence of an Arabic substratum. It is, therefore, likely that he was a Jew from South Arabia and one of its Jewish settlements.<sup>1</sup>

Abu Šālīḥ, the Armenian (very early thirteenth century), testifies to the Judaic leaven in Abyssinian Christianity:<sup>2</sup>

والحیثة مملكة سابا ومنها حضرت ملكة اليمن الى اورشليم لتسمع من سليمان  
كلام الحكمة

Abyssinia is the kingdom of Sheba; from it the Queen of the Yemen came to Jerusalem to hear words of wisdom from Solomon.

وعندهم تابوت العهد الذي فيه اللوحى والحجارة المكتوبة باسم الله  
بالوصايا التي امر الله بها بني اسرائيل . . . وحمله بجماعة كبيرة من بني  
اسرائيل منسوين الى نسل داوود النبي وهم يرض حمر شقر . . . وذكر ان  
التجاشى كان ابيض احمر اشقر وجميع نسله الى اليوم وذكر انه من نسل هارون  
موسى عند وصوله الى بلاد الحبشة وتزوج موسى ابنة الملك

The Abyssinians possess the Ark of the Covenant, in which are the two tables of stone, inscribed by the finger of God with the commandments which he ordained for the children of Israel. . . . And the Ark is carried by a large number of Israelites descended from the family of the prophet David,<sup>3</sup> who are white and red (in complexion), with blond hair. . . . It is said that the Negus was white and red of complexion, with blond hair, and so are all his family to the present day; and it is said that he was of the family of Moses and Aaron, on account of the coming of Moses into Abyssinia. And Moses married the King's daughter.<sup>4</sup>

Abu Šālīḥ also reports<sup>5</sup> that at the consecration of churches the Abyssinians were directed to slay twelve beasts. A. J. Butler notes<sup>6</sup> that this custom of animal sacrifices was quite unexampled in Coptic Church history and quite against the Coptic canons. It can only mean . . . that the patriarch sanctioned the

<sup>1</sup> Other Jewish travellers with information on Ethiopia in general and the Falashas in particular were Benjamin of Tudela (twelfth century) whose account has been discussed by Coma Roussin (JA xxvii (1911-12), 328 ff.); Ellis of Ferrara (Cerulli, *Ethiopi in Palestina*, I, 254 G), and Obadiah of Bertinoro (op. cit., pp. 320-4), both in the fifteenth century. Cf. also Adcock, *OP/OB* PDD, esp. pp. 146-78.

<sup>2</sup> *Churches and Monasteries of Egypt*, II, 1054 to 1072.

<sup>3</sup> On the linguistic aspects of this word see excursus to Chapter II.

<sup>4</sup> For addition of language see op. cit., pp. 1025-1027.

<sup>5</sup> I.e. the father of Solomon who is the father of Menelik I (Keira Nagast).

<sup>6</sup> According to the Midrash and Josephus (pp. 13-14, above). It is interesting that Abu Šālīḥ was familiar with this Jewish story which, together with many similar aspects, bears witness to the currency of this material in early Abyssinia—unaffected by the introduction of Christianity and the translation of the Scriptures.

<sup>7</sup> Fl. 1066-1072.

<sup>8</sup> Op. cit., p. 291.

maintenance of a purely Abyssinian practice. From the earliest times there were large Jewish settlements in Abyssinia, and it is probable that the custom of religious sacrifice derived from the Jews remained after the conversion of the people to Christianity. . . .

Abu Šālīḥ wrote well over two centuries before the religious reforms of Zar'a Ya'qob (mid fifteenth century), and his testimony alone would appear to invalidate the theory that it was Zar'a Ya'qob who was responsible for the introduction of Judaizing trends into the life of the Ethiopian nation and church. As this judgement was expressed by no less an authority than Dillmann,<sup>1</sup> it naturally deserves the greatest respect. But the operative passage does not take sufficient account<sup>2</sup> of the considerable body of earlier evidence which points to the prevalence of a Judaic sediment prior to Zar'a Ya'qob:<sup>3</sup>

. . . und vieles von dem, was wir von unserem Standpunkt aus reine Misbräuche nennen müssen, erst durch ihn [i.e. Zar'a Ya'qob] zu allgemeiner Herrschaft gelangt ist. Namentlich zeigt sich jetzt klar, daß die eigenthümliche Verquickung des Christenthums mit mosaïschen Satzungen und Gebräuchen, in welcher die abessinische Kirche fast einzig dasteht, nicht aus dem früheren jüdischen Bekenntnisstand des ganzen Volks oder großer Theile desselben [my italics] zu erklären ist, sondern auf bewußter Zurückdrängung einer schon stark ausgebreiteten reineren christlichen Sitte<sup>4</sup> und rücksichtsloser Erneuerung altkirchlicher, in den Canones fixirter Übungen beruht.

Dillmann accepts, of course, that Judaic customs existed before Zar'a Ya'qob, but avers that it was he who accorded them general acceptance ('allgemeine Herrschaft'). In one respect Dillmann goes much further than most by suggesting (in the italicized sentence) that at an early period either the entire people or at least large parts were adherents of the Jewish faith. So widespread a diffusion of Judaism goes, I believe, beyond the evidence at our disposal. Dillmann proceeds to state that 'ohne Frage waren ja Juden im Reich',<sup>5</sup> but he rejects the surmise,

<sup>1</sup> And echoed by so eminent a scholar as M. Rodinson: '[Dillmann] montrait que ces réformes étaient en bonne partie responsables de ces coutumes qui avaient semblé si nettement judaïques par la suite' (JSS 1964, p. 13).

<sup>2</sup> This is also the gravamen of Naldete's criticism (GGÄ 1884, pp. 280-1): 'Wir möchten sehen [i.e. of Judaism] direkten Einfluß auf die abessinische Kirche für weit größer halten, als es Dillmann zu thun scheint. Man bedenke nur, daß es hier Juden gewesen sein können, welche die zahlreichen Korrekturen der Genäbel nach dem Hebräischen vorgenommen haben.' This last point will be discussed in Chapter I.

<sup>3</sup> Dillmann, *Über die Religion*, . . . p. 68.

<sup>4</sup> Rodinson (loc. cit.) misunderstands this phrase by rendering *nos mœurs chrétiennes* as 'coutumes purement chrétiennes', i.e. 'purely Christian customs' instead of 'higher Christian ethics' or 'more refined Christian morals'.

<sup>5</sup> Op. cit., p. 69. I am not certain that there were, in fact, large Jewish segments in the Ethiopian population during the fifteenth century.



rightly I think, that Zar'a Ya'qob encouraged the introduction of Jewish practices to curry favour with these heterogeneous elements. A glance at the *Maṣḥafa Barhan*<sup>1</sup> shows with what distaste Zar'a Ya'qob looked upon the Jews and how improbable it is that he would have adjusted his policies to suit their prejudices and requirements. In fact, his 'reforms' represent an amalgam of deeply rooted and ancient Judaic practices with a renewed emphasis on the lore and customs of the Old Testament.

Earlier, in the fourteenth century, 'Amda Ṣayon had sent troops to the province of Begamedr to fight against 'renegades, who had once been Christians but who now denied Christ like the Jews'.<sup>2</sup> These are vague references to Jewish proselytizing activities (or, more likely, physical coercion) in the north-west of Ethiopia, and it would be unsafe to describe these elements either as Jews or as Falashas<sup>3</sup> *simpliciter*. Much more specific is the information contained in Shihāb ad-Dīn's sixteenth-century *Futūḥ al-Habaša*:

وكانت بلاد سمين يملكها يهود الحيشة واسمهم بلقشم فلاحا انهم يقرون بالله واحدا ولا يعرفون غير ذلك من الايمان ولا نبي ولا صديق، وكان اهل بحر عنيا قد استعبدوهم اربعين سنة يستخدمونهم ويحرقون لهم . . .<sup>4</sup>

The Semien province was ruled by the Jews of Abyssinia who are called Falashas in their own language; they recognize one God only and nothing else in the way of faith: neither prophet nor saint. The people of Bahr Amba have subjugated them for the past forty years and employed them to work the land for them. . . .

Beginning with the fifteenth century we find, in occidental sources, several references to Jewish influences on the Abyssinian type of Christianity. These indications have usually been transmitted by travellers to the Holy Land who came into contact with members of the Ethiopian Church. Most of this information has been assembled, with characteristic learning, in Cerulli's masterly *Etiopi in Palestina*.<sup>5</sup> In the 1480s, on a pilgrimage to Jerusalem, Felix Faber made the acquaintance of the Abyssinian community of whom he remarks, *inter alia*:

... et quamquam ista faciant et observent, tamen perniciosi erroribus

<sup>1</sup> Edited and translated by C. Conti Rossini and L. Ricci, *C.S.C.O.*, Aeth. 47, 48, 51, 52, Louvain, 1964-5; see esp. vol. 52, pp. 51 ff. and index under *Guedi*.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Ferruchou, 'Histoire des guerres d'Amda Seyon', *JA* 1889, p. 293; Dillmann, *Kriegsgeschichte des König: Amda-Seyon*, p. 1017.

<sup>3</sup> As was done by Huntington, *Clarinet Victoriae*, pp. 61-62, cf. *BSOAS* 1966, p. 610.

<sup>4</sup> Ed. R. Basset, p. 342 (Arabic part); see also note (4) on pp. 456-8.

<sup>5</sup> Two vols., Rome, 1943-7.

infecti sunt, et haeretici abhorribiles ecclesiae sanctae. Accipiunt enim cum Judaeis, Sarracenis et Jacobitis inutilem, immo damnabilem circumcisionem. . . .<sup>1</sup>

Close on a hundred years later Leonard Rauwolff (or Rauchwolff), a physician from Augsburg, wrote a more detailed account which also included a sketch of the Solomon-Sheba legend:

... haltens noch in vielen andern Stücken die alte Weise der Jüden. Als da sie den Sabbath-tag heyligen, und für jren gewöhnlichen Feiertag halten. Item, daß sie nicht von allerley Speisen essen, die im alten Testament als unreine verhothen. Wenden zu jrer entschuldigung für, der heylige Apostel Philippus habe, da er mit dem Kämmerer der Königin Candaces in Mohrenlandt, hinab nach Gaza reyset, und in bekehret, diß und anders mehr, als gebornen Jüden, zugelassen. . . .<sup>2</sup>

At about the same time (late sixteenth century) Pêro Pais apparently accepted the Ethiopian view of the Jewish origin of Abyssinian culture and institutions:

Antes q̃ a Rainha Sabba fosse a Ierusalem a ouir a sabedoria de Salomão, todos os da Ethiopia erão gentios e adorauão diferentes Idolos; mas quando ella tornou de Ierusalem lhes trouxe a historia dos Genesis, e estiuerao na ley dos Iudeos até a vinda de Christo, sojcitandose a seus ritos e ceremonias e guardando os mandamentos de Deos. . . .<sup>3</sup>

Jerome Lobo (early seventeenth century) is more specific:

... their [i.e. the 'Abyssins'] present Religion is nothing but a kind of confused Miscellany of Jewish and Mahometan Superstitions, with which they have corrupted those Remnants of Christianity which they still retain.<sup>4</sup>

The great Ludolf has a remarkably balanced chapter *De prisca Habessinorum religione et ritibus eorum Iudaicis* in his *Historia Aethiopica* (1681; book iii, chap. 1) which is supplemented by precious observations in the *Commentarius*. Ludolf discusses the origin of these Judaic rites and dwells on such practices as circumcision (pointing to its prevalence among other peoples), dietary observances, Sabbath legislation, levirate marriage, etc. He also published, in his *Commentarius*, the important *Confessio Claudii* in which the sixteenth-century King Galawdewos defends the monophysite faith against Roman Catholic polemics,

<sup>1</sup> Cited after Cerulli, op. cit. ii. 27.

<sup>2</sup> Cerulli op. cit. i. 310-13.

<sup>3</sup> Pais, *História da Eudopia*, Porto edition, ii. 9.

<sup>4</sup> Lobo, *A Voyage to Abyssinia*, translated into English (from the Abbé Le Grand's version) by Samuel Johnson, 1735, p. 28. See now G. F. Beckingham's account of the long lost manuscript of Lobo's original version in *JSS* 1965, pp. 282 ff.



A century later, James Bruce of Kinnaird makes frequent references to the Judaic customs of the Ethiopians and censures the first Christian missionaries [who], finding these and other Jewish traditions confirmed in the country, chose to respect them rather than refute them. Circumcision, the doctrine of clean and unclean meats, and many other Jewish rites and ceremonies are therefore part of the religion of the Abyssinians at this day.<sup>1</sup>

Early Judaic influences and deep-rooted Old Testament practices and customs have thus combined to produce this complex pattern which we shall have to probe in some detail in subsequent chapters.

<sup>1</sup> Bruce, *Trinidad*, 19.

<sup>1</sup> R. S. Whiteway in his introduction to *The Portuguese Expedition to Abyssinia*, p. xxi.

<sup>2</sup> This opinion was expressed by no less an authority than Archbishop David Mathew, *Ethiopia*, p. 12.

\* A. Z. Arslanov, *Récueil de textes salachar*, p. 4.

<sup>1</sup> *Stories of Ethiopia*, pp. 144-5.

## T

## BIBLE TRANSLATIONS

### General considerations

There is no unanimity in Ethiopian tradition as to the translation of the Bible, but there has survived an interesting traditional account about the rendering into Ge'ez of the Old and New Testaments:<sup>1</sup>

[illegible]

... and as to the books of the O.T., they were translated from Hebrew into Go'az in the days of the Queen of the South who visited

Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris, MS. Eth. 113, ff. 69 seqq. (= Zötenberg, *Catalogue*, pp. 127-8).



Solomon. Hence the interpretation (rendering) of the prophetic books extant in Ethiopia was faithful, as the population were of the Jewish religion before the birth of Christ. However, in the translation after the birth of Christ the crucifiers distorted the true word into a testimony of falsehood. As to the manner in which the books of the prophets have been translated from Hebrew into Gə'əz, one will find an indication in the Book of Kings which gives a translation of Hebrew words into Gə'əz, i.e. ለእሂ: meaning 'God', ለዮሴ: meaning 'Lord', ለባሕ: meaning 'of hosts' (cf. Zotenberg, op. cit., p. 8, 2nd col., lines 10-13). As to the books of the N.T. of our country Ethiopia, they were translated from ሮማይስጡ: (Latin?) into Gə'əz before the appearance of the Nestorian Faith and before the creation of the doctrine of Leo and before the assembly of the Council of Dogs, i.e. the bishops of Chalcedon. Hence the Ethiopian rendering of the Old and New Testaments was pure as gold and proven as silver. . . .

Another traditional ascription will be found in the Synaxarium for the 21st of Nahase<sup>2</sup> (20 Nahase in Zotenberg, *Catalogue*, p. 194, no. 20):

በዛጊ፡ በሰጥ፡ ለዕረፈ፡ ለባ፡ ለሰጥ፡ መተርጉም፡ . . .

በሰጥ፡ ለክ፡ ለእመ፡ ሃይማኖት፡ በርጥ፡

ተሰጠ፡ ለፊት፡ መገኘል፡ ለገዢ፡ ለዕክ፡ ተከባ፡

ሰጥ፡ ለክርስቲያን፡ ከመ፡ በገዢ፡ ፤ ፤

በክርስቲያን፡ ምዕሳት፡ ለመገዛ፡ ከርፍ፡ መልእክት፡

አም፡ ሃረር፡ ለግዕዝ፡ መጻሕፍት፡ ተጻል፡

On this day died Abba Salama, the translator [of the Scriptures]. . . .  
Greetings to you, root of the tree of faith,  
Upon whom the commandments of the Law and the Gospels have been  
poured;  
Salama, how your memory has abided with us!  
By your lips sweeter than the scent of myrrh and aloe  
Have the Scriptures been translated from Arabic into Gə'əz.

We shall discuss later on whether the reference to Arabic relates to translation or revision. A lot has been written<sup>3</sup> about

<sup>3</sup> Cf. the observations on this passage by A. Rahlfs in a posthumously published essay 'Die äthiopische Bibelübersetzung' (written about 1916) in the 2nd ed. of his *Septuaginta-Studien*, Göttingen, 1964, pp. 667-8 (I am indebted to Professor Polotsky for drawing my attention to this article); also Conti Rossini, *ZA* x (1895), 296-41.  
<sup>4</sup> Ousli, *Le Synaxaire éthiopien* (*Patrologia Orientalis*, 4, Paris—no date), p. 359 [1892].  
<sup>5</sup> Luloff, *Commentaries*, p. 295.  
<sup>6</sup> Luloff, op. cit., p. 296; Dillmann, *Zur Geschichte . . .*, p. 20; Conti Rossini, *ZA* 1895 and 1912; Fraxetius in *Herzog's Realencyclopädie* III (1897), 87; Zotenberg, *Catalogue*, p. 263, col. I, O, 14: 'Abba Salama, le traducteur de l'Écriture Sainte, qui est enterré à Mjaguer'.

the identity of Abba Salama, but Ethiopian tradition seems clear, for Frumentius is referred to as ለባ፡ ለሰጥ፡ ከግዛ፡ ለርሃ፡ and his commemoration day is 26 Hamle, whereas the present prelate is described as መተርጉም፡ and his day is 20 (or 21) Nahase.

Although Ethiopic studies proper may be said to have begun with scholarly attention to Bible translations and editions, such interest has sadly abated of late; and the oldest and most extensive non-epigraphic monument of Ethiopic literature<sup>1</sup> still remains without a proper critical edition. In a masterly paper, submitted to the Third International Conference of Ethiopian Studies at Addis Ababa in 1966 (still unpublished at the time of writing),<sup>2</sup> O. Löfgren has deplored this present-day lack of interest, particularly among young scholars, in the text of the Gə'əz Old Testament and has proposed the establishment of an international body to organize a critical edition of the Ethiopic Bible.<sup>3</sup> 'The first task of such an institute would be the preparation of a list of all Bible MSS. in Gə'əz known to exist in Europe as well as in Ethiopia' to be followed by the assignment of text editions to individual scholars.<sup>4</sup>

It is just over 450 years ago that Johannes Potken printed the first Ethiopic text, the 1513 Psalter published at Rome,<sup>5</sup> but naturally this was not a work of critical scholarship. For that we had to await the advent of the polymathic talents of Job Ludolf who gave us the first critical edition of *Psalterium Davidis aethiopicum et latine*.<sup>6</sup> August Dillmann, in the nineteenth century, carried a great deal further what had been begun by Ludolf 150 years earlier: he published, between 1853 and 1894, the Octateuch, Samuel and Kings as well as the Old Testament Apocrypha.<sup>7</sup> Among those who followed in Dillmann's footsteps

Lantschoot, 'Abba Salama, métropolit d'Éthiopie' in *Atti del Congresso Int. di Studi Et.*, pp. 397-401. Lantschoot gives no fewer than thirteen separate references in Ethiopic literature to Abba Salama's activity as a translator. Cf. also Cerulli, *Storia della letteratura etiopica*, p. 68.  
<sup>1</sup> . . . primum locum obtinent Biblia Aethiopica, quae omnium literarum Abyssinicarum fundamentum sunt et normae, ad quam reliqui scriptores suum dicendi scribendique genus conformaverunt' (Dillmann, *Lectiones*, v).

<sup>2</sup> I am indebted to Professor Löfgren for sending me a copy of this paper.  
<sup>3</sup> This proposal did not, in fact, come before the Conference at Addis Ababa, but it is hoped that the 1969 Conference to be held at Warsaw will initiate practical steps to deal with this problem.

<sup>4</sup> Löfgren, op. cit.  
<sup>5</sup> *Alphabetum seu potius syllabarium literarum Chaldaeorum, Psalterium Chaldaeorum . . . opera Joannis Potken, Romae, 1513*.  
<sup>6</sup> See also A. Rahlfs, 'Nissel und Petrus, ihre äthiopischen Textausgaben und Typen' in *Nachrichten d. K. Gesellschaft d. Wissenschaften, Göttingen*, 1917.  
<sup>7</sup> *Sam. duobus impressis et tribus MSSis criticis diligenter collatis et emendatis*, Frankfurt, 1701.

<sup>8</sup> *Biblia Veteris Testamenti aethiopica*.



were J. Bachmann<sup>1</sup> (Isaiah, Lamentations, Obadiah, Malachi), O. Boyd<sup>2</sup> (Genesis to Leviticus), Pereira,<sup>3</sup> Löfgren,<sup>4</sup> Mercer,<sup>5</sup> Gleave,<sup>6</sup> and one or two others. Some books of the Old Testament have not been edited at all: Jeremiah,<sup>7</sup> Ezekiel, Proverbs, Hosea, and Micah, while others are in urgent need of re-edition in the light of earlier or better manuscripts now available.<sup>8</sup>

We are even worse off as regards the edition of the Ethiopic New Testament, for here we have virtually no critical studies at all. The *editio princeps* was published at Rome in 1548 and is owed to the endeavours of three Ethiopian monks who had come to Rome from Debra Libanos, via Jerusalem, and had brought with them some Ethiopic Biblical manuscripts.<sup>9</sup> The senior monk, Täsfa Šayon, was a well-educated man and attained, under the name of 'Petrus Aethiops' (or 'Pietro Indiano'), a good deal of local fame. His New Testament text gained a dominant position in Europe and in all subsequent study of the Ethiopic Gospels.

There is, however, an important exception to the gloomy picture of lacking or inadequate editions: the books of Enoch,<sup>10</sup> Jubilees<sup>11</sup> and, to a somewhat lesser extent, Ascension of Isaiah<sup>12</sup> have for long enjoyed excellent critical treatment. This is no doubt due to the fact that their full versions were extant in Ethiopic but not in other languages, which accorded to the Ethiopic text a critical value it did not possess in the case of the canonical books of the Bible.

The translation of the Bible into Ethiopic thus comprises all

<sup>1</sup> *Der Prophet Jesaja nach der äth. Bibelübersetzung*, Berlin, 1893.  
<sup>2</sup> *Bibliotheca Aethiopica*, Genesis (Leiden and Princeton, 1898), Exodus and Leviticus (1911), Job (1907), Esther (1915), Ezra-Neh. (1916), Amos (1917)—in *Patriologia Orientalis*.  
<sup>3</sup> Daniel (1907), Jonah, Nahum, Habakkuk, Zephaniah, Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi (1930).  
<sup>4</sup> *Ecclesiastes* (1931). Cf., however, the reviews by Löfgren, *MO* 1933, and Littmann, *OLZ* 1933/6.  
<sup>5</sup> Song of Songs (1951).  
<sup>6</sup> We possess, however, a preliminary study by Joseph Schaller, *Die äthiopische Übersetzung des Propheten Jesaias*, Freiburg, 1912.  
<sup>7</sup> De Basani's Ethiopic Old Testament (Amman, 1900-6) is a complete edition, though scarcely a critical one, and will be discussed below.  
<sup>8</sup> *Testamentum Novum cum Epistola Pauli ad Hebraeos . . . quae omnia Frater Petrus Aethiops . . . imprimi curavit*, Rome, 1548.  
<sup>9</sup> Cf. Dillmann, *Liber Henoch Aethiopicus*, Leipzig, 1851; Charles, *The Eth. Version of the Book of Enoch*, Oxford, 1906; idem, *The Book of Enoch*, Oxford, 1912; Flemming, *Das Buch Henoch*, Leipzig, 1902; Goldschmidt, *Das Buch Henoch* (trans. from Ethiopic into Hebrew), Berlin, 1891; Ullendorff, 'An Aramaic Vorlage of the Ethiopic Text of Enoch?', in *Atti del Congresso Int. di Studi Et.*, Rome, 1930.  
<sup>10</sup> Dillmann, *Liber Jubilaeorum*, Kiel, 1859; Charles, *The Ethiopic Version of the Hebrew Book of Jubilees*, Oxford, 1895; idem, *The Book of Jubilees*, London, 1902; Barua and Zuromend, 'A New Edition of the Eth. Book of Jubilees' in *JSS*, Spring 1964; Rénch, *Das Buch der Jubiläen*, Leipzig, 1874.  
<sup>11</sup> Dillmann, *Ascensio Isaiae*, Leipzig, 1877; Tisserant, *Ascension d'Isaie*, Paris, 1909.

canonical and apocryphal<sup>1</sup> books in addition to some pseudepigrapha that were accepted as genuine in Abyssinia. It represents the foremost literary achievement of the Aksumite period and was probably a gradual process extending over a century or two. During the literary renaissance which occurred in the reign of king 'Amda Šayon (mid-fourteenth century) some attention appears to have been devoted to a revision of the existing Bible translations, and it is this activity which is usually connected with the name of the Metropolitan Salama,<sup>2</sup> 'Translator of the Holy Scriptures'.

Large numbers of Ethiopic Biblical manuscripts, either of the whole canon or of individual books, are preserved in European libraries and in Ethiopian monastery collections. Some of these are splendid specimens, beautifully illuminated and magnificently written, often requiring as many as 100-50 goats to provide the parchment. Very few Ethiopic manuscripts can be securely attributed to the earliest period of the 'Solomonic restoration' (thirteenth century). Most of them are later copies, for it must be assumed that the number of those which fell victim to Ahmad Grañ's destructive fury was very large. Also, the dating of Ethiopic manuscripts presents considerable problems. The conditions in which many of them are kept in Ethiopia are liable to expose them to damp as well as to damage of other kinds and thus tend to give them an appearance of greater age than they actually deserve. The most reliable indications in determining the approximate date of manuscripts are still furnished by palaeographical criteria,<sup>3</sup> although these have to be employed with much caution and qualification. Fortunately, however, a number of fourteenth- and fifteenth-century manuscripts have survived in the monasteries of Debra Libanos, Debra Bizen, Gunda Gundie, St. Stephen of Hayq, the islands of Lake Tana, and some others.

The treasures of Ethiopic Biblical manuscripts in the Bibliothèque Nationale<sup>4</sup> and the British Museum (Dillmann and Wright) are of exceptional range and quality, but fine collections also exist in the Vatican Library (Grébaut-Tisserant), the Bodleian Library (Dillmann and Ullendorff), Cambridge

<sup>1</sup> Edited by Dillmann in 1894 (appearing shortly after his death in the same year) and including Baruch, Epistola Jeremiae, Tobit, Judith, Ecclesiasticus, Sapientia, Esdras, Apocalypsis, Esdras Graecus.  
<sup>2</sup> Cf. Wright, *B. M. Catalogue*, p. xi and especially the important observations by Conti Rossini, *Collection d'Abbadie*, pp. 536-63.  
<sup>3</sup> Catalogues by Zoltenberg, d'Abbadie, Chabre, Conti Rossini, Grébaut-Sirelcy.  
<sup>4</sup> Details in this and the following instances will be found in the Bibliography under the name of the catalogue.



University Library (Ullendorff and Wright), Berlin (Dillmann), Leningrad (Turaiev), Vienna (Rhodokanakis), Windsor Castle (Ullendorff), Frankfurt (Goldschmidt), the John Rylands Library, Manchester,<sup>1</sup> and a few other places.<sup>2</sup>

*Time, authorship, and Vorlage of Ethiopic Bible translations*

We must now address ourselves to the questions raised at the beginning of this chapter: at what time was the Bible translated into Ethiopic? Was it a work accomplished simultaneously with the introduction of Christianity in the middle of the fourth century or did it extend over a prolonged period? And what was the identity of the translator or translators? Were they Syrian monks or Greek-speaking Ethiopians or teams of translators who were able to handle the Greek, Syriac, and Hebrew texts, possibly with the aid of some local Jews who might have had a traditional knowledge of Hebrew? And what kind of revision was carried out in the fourteenth century? Was it based on Arabic alone? How profound was it and did it seriously interfere with the original translation?

All these questions, and more, have been asked and conjecturally answered at one time or another, but it would be hazardous to assert that we have reached conclusions which have been adequately tested. Not only—as has been shown earlier—is the work of editing far from being complete, but it need scarcely be emphasized that *Vorlagestudien* are notoriously risky and have led respectable scholars to very different inferences and diametrically opposed results. It might be useful to begin by reviewing the opinions of some of the principal scholars in this field.

As is so often the case in the sphere of Ethiopian studies, the first important recognitions come from the pen of Ludolf:

Habesini cum religione Christiana etiam Sacram Scripturam acceperunt. Illa in linguam Aethiopicam (quam Tigrensis quondam vernaculam fuisse diximus) ex versione LXX interpretum translata fuit . . . secundum exemplar quoddam in Ecclesia Alexandrina usitatum. . . .

De autore et tempore versionis nihil certi compertum habeo; probabile tamen est, eam tempore conversionis Habesinorum, vel paulo post, . . . concinnatam fuisse. . . .

<sup>1</sup> A catalogue of this fine collection was begun by the present writer, but had to be interrupted owing to more pressing commitments. It is not now expected to be completed before the early 1970s.

<sup>2</sup> Gregory, *Prolegomena* (1894), pp. 900–11, lists no fewer than 101 Ethiopic Biblical manuscripts in European libraries—and this is far from being an exhaustive inventory.

Novum Testamentum ex textu Graeco authentico verum quidem habent. . . .<sup>1</sup>

Ludolf thus finds that the Old Testament was translated from the Septuagint, according to a version used by the Church of Alexandria, probably either at the time of the conversion to Christianity or a little later. And the New Testament was likewise rendered from a Greek text. In his *Commentarius* (pp. 295 ff.) Ludolf rejects the view<sup>2</sup> that the Bible was translated into Ga'az from Arabic ('. . . Aethiopica tam Veteris quam Novi Testamenti versio . . . ex Arabica lingua nullo modo facta dici potest').

Dillmann, writing 150 years later, was able to form his judgement on the basis of a good deal of text-critical work, mostly accomplished by himself. He divided Ethiopic Old Testament manuscripts into three groups:<sup>3</sup> (1) those in which the original translation, derived from the LXX, is fairly well preserved; yet even here we have to reckon with large numbers of variants (cf. Zotenberg, *Catalogue*, pp. 3, 5, 7, 8); (2) those which contain a later text, generally revised according to the LXX, and one that is linguistically smoother and more modern; (3) those which have been revised on the basis of the Hebrew text (cf. Zotenberg, *Catalogue*, pp. 9–11). Nöldeke has expressed the view<sup>4</sup> 'daß es bloß Juden gewesen sein können, welche die zahlreichen Korrekturen der Geëzbibel nach dem Hebräischen vorgenommen haben'. Nobody seems to have hazarded a guess as to the identity and period of those Jews. Nöldeke, loc. cit., realized, of course, that the Falashas have no knowledge of Hebrew, yet he seems to have toyed with the idea that in earlier times they possessed 'sicher auch größere litterarische Bildung'. I think there is no evidence to substantiate the identification of the Falashas with those elements who might have assisted with their knowledge of Hebrew in the translation of the Ga'az Old Testament.<sup>5</sup>

Dillmann (loc. cit.) has averred that the old Ethiopic translation was very faithful and rendered the Greek text in a most literal manner—often to the point of following the Greek order of words. At the same time, however, it is 'recht lesbar und . . .

<sup>1</sup> Ludolf, *Hist. Aeth.*, Lib. II, Cap. 4, 2–7.

<sup>2</sup> *Bibl. V.T. aeth.*, vol. II, fasc. 1, app. crit., pp. 3 ff. See also Herscov's *Realencyclopädie*, III, 87 ff.

<sup>3</sup> *GGA* 1884, p. 381. See also footnote (2) to p. 27, above.

<sup>4</sup> In a letter to me, dated 29 Jan. 1967, M. Rodinson says: 'Il est bien possible aussi qu'ils [les Juifs] aient fourni des conseils techniques pour la traduction de l'Ancien Testament en ga'az'. In these general terms, and in the absence of any more detailed information, this proposition seems quite feasible.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. p. 30, above.



fließend und trifft mit dem Sinn und den Worten des hebräischen Urtextes im A. T. oft auf *überraschende* [my italics] Weise zusammen'. I, too, find it 'surprising' that there should be this frequent congruence, in sense and expression, with the Hebrew original when the Ethiopic text is supposed to be a direct derivative of the LXX without the intervention of any Hebrew or other Semitic *Vorlage*. This will need further probing. At the same time, Dillmann declares that the Ethiopian translators were not very learned and, as it seems, 'auch der griechischen Sprache nicht durchaus mächtig', which inevitably led to many mistakes and misunderstandings. There would, therefore, appear to be at least a *prima facie* presumption that with their inadequate knowledge of Greek they might well have had recourse to a second *Vorlage* which would also account for the existence of Hebrew or Semitic correspondences that cannot be explained from the Septuagint alone.

As to the time of the translations, Dillmann and Praetorius<sup>1</sup> have argued that they were not necessarily made at the time of the introduction of Christianity in the fourth century. They have assumed a gradual process extending over two or even three centuries and obviously involving a number of translators. This last point had already been made by Ludolf<sup>2</sup> who conjectured that different renderings of the same word presupposed different authorship—in itself by no means a safe inference. Both Dillmann and Praetorius accept (loc. cit.) that the Old Testament and New Testament versions were later modified to some extent by individual scribes and readers and made to conform with Arabic or Hebrew models (Zotenberg, op. cit., p. 116, is a case in point).

An equally complex problem is the determination of the identity of the Septuagint recension from which the Ethiopic Old Testament is derived. In view of the dependence of the Ethiopian Church on that of Alexandria it has often been tacitly assumed that the Ethiopic version must be based on the Hesi-chian recension then current in Egypt.<sup>3</sup> But different scholars have thought that they were able to identify different recensions—Alexandrinus,<sup>4</sup> Vaticanus,<sup>5</sup> or Sinaiticus<sup>6</sup>—underlying the Ethiopic text.

<sup>1</sup> Herzog's *RP* III, 98.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Rahle, *Septuaginta-Studien*, II, 156-7.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Rahle, *Septuaginta-Studien*, I, 87; II, 235; Praetorius, loc. cit.; S. Reckendorf, *ZAW* VII

(1887), 68.

<sup>4</sup> Rahle, op. cit. I, 84; 'Aeth. ist in den Königsbüchern B's nächster Verwandter.' Similarly

Knapp in *ZA* XII, 320.

<sup>5</sup> Schlier, *Alt. Übers. Jer.*, pp. 156-7, feels justified in excluding Alexandrinus altogether

<sup>6</sup> *Commentarius*, p. 296.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. Hackspill, *ZA* XI (1896), 123.

As to the translation of the Gospels, Hackspill (whose 'study deservedly acquired authoritative standing'<sup>1</sup>) came to the following conclusions which merit to be quoted in full:<sup>2</sup>

1. Der äthiopische Evangelientext ist eine Übersetzung aus dem Griechischen.
2. Dieser griechische Text ist nicht der Alexandrinische, sondern ein Syro-occidentaler.
3. Als Zeitalter dieser Übersetzung ist ungefähr das Jahr 500 anzunehmen.
4. Unter dem Einflusse der vermittelt der Alexandrinischen Vulgata in den äthiopischen Text eingedrungenen koptisch-syrischen Elemente nahm die Go'az Übersetzung die Form an, die uns heute, natürlich mit vielen Varianten, in allen gedruckten Exemplaren und den meisten Handschriften vorliegt.

These important recognitions had been anticipated, in substance, by Dillmann,<sup>3</sup> Guidi,<sup>4</sup> and Zotenberg,<sup>5</sup> but Hackspill's paper is the most detailed and is based on the extensive sample of B.N. MS. 32 (the first ten chapters of Matthew).

Praetorius (loc. cit., p. 89), reverting to the Old Testament, draws attention to the fact that Ethiopia was converted to Christianity 'durch aramäische Missionare'. Hence:

Der tiefgehende literarische Einfluß dieser Aramäer zeigt sich in den sehr zahlreichen aramäischen Fremdwörtern für die neuen Begriffe der christlichen Lehre,<sup>6</sup> die einfach ins Äthiopische herübergenommen

and asserting that 'der Äthiopo steht in nächster Verwandtschaftsbeziehung zum Typus des Sinaiticus'.

<sup>1</sup> So Polotsky in *JSS* 1964, p. 9.

<sup>2</sup> *ZA* XI (1896), 126. Hackspill's study had been preceded by Guidi's 'Le traduzioni degli Evangelii in arabo e in etiopico', *Mem. R. Acc. Linc.*, 1888, to which H. pays tribute. In fact, H.'s conclusions tally with those of Guidi—except that he refines the determination of the Greek prototype. It was Guidi who had drawn attention to the importance of MS. 32 in the Bibl. Nationale, Paris, and who, as H.'s teacher, had advised him in the preparation of his study. I would respectfully differ from Polotsky who thinks (in a most remarkable paper read to the 2nd Int. Conf. of Eth. Stud. at Manchester—*JSS* 1964, pp. 9-10—to which frequent reference will be made in the following) that Guidi had misunderstood H.'s 'syro-occidental' (*ZA* XI, 129). In fact, H. also uses 'syro-occidental' (op. cit. 126), and it is this which G. correctly turns into 'syro-occidentale'. The addition of 'di S. Luciano' (*Storia della lett. et* (1932), p. 13) is redundant rather than wrong, and Guidi's position is quite clear from his own paper, esp. pp. 12, 33, 55, 57. Polotsky is right in his strictures upon the present writer (p. 10), but Guidi may safely be exculpated from misunderstanding Westcott and Hort's *NA* (he specifically refers to their classification on p. 33—*MRA*, 1888).

<sup>3</sup> B.M. *Catalogue*, p. 78.

<sup>4</sup> *MRA*, 1888.

<sup>5</sup> *Catalogue*, pp. 24 ff.

<sup>6</sup> Polotsky (op. cit.) has cogently argued that these Aramaic words belong 'to the Judaic leaver in Christianity' (p. 10). Yet to say that 'none of these words is distinctly Christian in meaning' (ibid.) is, perhaps, a little too definite. Nöldeke, *New Babylon*, p. 37, describes *ḥḥ* as 'priest' as 'ein sprachlich christliches Wort'; the same is true of a few others such as *ḥḥ* (p. 35), *ḥḥ*, and possibly *ḥḥ* (p. 35) despite the justifiably cautionary note sounded by Polotsky (pp. 4-7) and the remarks on p. 40, below. While Polotsky has convincingly shown that the overwhelming number of such words are derived from Jewish-Aramaic and belong to the pre-Christian Jewish sediment in Ethiopia, this does not, of



und daselbst dauernd beibehalten wurden. Es wäre wohl denkbar, daß schon in jener frühesten Zeit mindestens einzelne Bücher des AT's durch die Aramäer oder ihre nächsten Schüler ins Äthiopische übertragen worden sind. Dann aber ist die Annahme einer ägyptisch-griechischen Vorlage so gut wie ganz ausgeschlossen.

Practorius' view is supported by Guidi and Conti Rossini.<sup>1</sup> The former thinks<sup>2</sup> that the translators have to be sought among the Syrian monophysite monks who came to Ethiopia after the Council of Chalcedon in 451 to escape the persecutions of members of their persuasion:

... che ad essi o ai loro discepoli si debba la traduzione della Sacra Scrittura... si può inferire dal fatto che il testo in essa seguito non è già quello di Esichio, ricevuto nel Patriarcato Alessandrino, cui certamente avrebbe seguito Frumenzio, ma bensì il sirio-occidentale di S. Luciano, ricevuto nel vasto Patriarcato di Antiochia ed oltre; onde è che in questa traduzione figurano parole aramaiche e nominatamente siriache: come *haymanot*.

Guidi is in error, however, in supposing that *haymānūtā* in the sense of *religion* 'faith' is limited to the Christian faith and peculiar to Syriac from the New Testament onwards (op. cit., p. 14). In fact, it occurs in the Targum of Psalm 33: 4, the Peshitta of Deuteronomy 32: 20, and in the Ethiopic Old Testament as well. Polotsky has shown (op. cit., p. 7) that these twin claims are not borne out by the documents. However, this does not, in my understanding, necessarily invalidate Guidi's assertion that Syrians introduced this term into Ge'ez—except that they applied it to pre-Christian sources as well and did not confine it to a narrowly circumscribed use: 'sono queste chiare indicazioni qual fosse la provenienza degli autori delle versioni colle quali comincia la letteratura ge'ez' (op. cit., p. 15). Guidi may well

course, invalidate the entire argument advanced by Guidi, Practorius, Gildemeister (apud Gregory) and others; for there might still be Syriac-mediated loanwords that belong to a later linguistic layer. And it seems that the linguistic and especially historical evidence favours such an assumption of two independent strands of Aramaic loanwords deriving from different Aramaic dialects and different periods. This question will be further discussed in the linguistic excursus to Chapter II.

<sup>1</sup> Gildemeister (in Gregory's *Prolegomena*, p. 896) argues that the formation of ecclesiastical Ethiopic and the translation of the Bible belong to different periods, for the 'Syriac' vocabulary must have acquired home-right before the translation was made. That, while G.'s conclusion may be correct, his reasoning is unacceptable: 'it seems hardly possible that the Aramaic words should have been introduced by Syriac-speaking missionaries' (p. 10). It is, however, arguable that the existing Aramaic stock owed its preservation and survival to the Aramaean missionaries, even though their dialect differed from the Jewish-Aramaic of the earlier layer.

<sup>2</sup> *Storia della letteratura etiopica*, pp. 15 ff.

be right in this conclusion, but the linguistic evidence by itself falls short of offering the 'clear indication' which he postulates.<sup>1</sup>

Conti Rossini<sup>2</sup> thinks that the diffusion of Christianity in the fourth century was insufficient to have warranted a translation of the Bible into Ethiopic at so early a period. By the middle of the fifth century, however, Ethiopia had become a decidedly Christian state, thanks largely to the missionary activities of 'ecclesiastici Siri'.<sup>3</sup> He adduces a list of Aramaic terms which, he believes, cannot be of Jewish provenance;<sup>4</sup> these, together with the well-known Syrian commercial activities over the entire orient, offer an adequate explanation for the presence of those Syrian nuclei in Ethiopia. Yet Conti Rossini avers that it is 'indiscutibile' that the Scriptures were translated into Ge'ez from Greek, for Greek was the official language of the 'Impero d'Oriente', commonly used in the Church of Syria, Asia Minor, and Egypt, and also of such general use in the Aksumite kingdom that inscriptions on monuments and legends on coins were written in Greek. When the Bible was rendered into Ethiopic from Greek, 'i suoni greci, la cui corrispondenza in etiopico poteva apparir dubbiosa, furono trascritti secondo il sistema siriano'.<sup>5</sup>

The first work to be translated was naturally that of the Gospels, but the translator (according to Conti Rossini) did not follow the text adopted in the Church of Egypt but the recension common in the Syrian<sup>6</sup> Church. The foreign words in the language of the Ethiopian Bible are almost always Greek, 'ma talora i nomi ebraici sembrano assumere una forma mista greco-semitica' (loc. cit.). Conti Rossini quotes no examples of this type of mixed Greek-Semitic forms. But despite his firm statement that the Scriptures were translated from Greek, he concedes that there exist indications of 'scritti' passati direttamente dal siriano in etiopico' (loc. cit.). Conti Rossini's own rehearsal

<sup>1</sup> There are, of course, other factors which Guidi mentions in his article in *MRAL* 1888, p. 34 (footnote): 'Se per l'A.T. vi poterono aver parte gli Aramei ebrei, per il Nuovo non vi ebbero parte che gli Aramei cristiani cioè, senza dubbio, i Siri. Quindi l'antica trascrizione dei nomi propri in etiopico segue la regola aramaica,  $\Phi = \epsilon$ ,  $\eta = \chi$ ,  $\theta = \tau$ ,  $\pi = \theta$ . Quest'influenza aramaica può esercitarsi nell'Abissinia non dal solo Egitto, ma anche dall'Arabia meridionale... Resta quindi assai probabile che monaci siri giacobiti siano penetrati in Abissinia.'

<sup>2</sup> See especially 'Note per la storia letteraria abissina', *MRAL* 1899, pp. 3-5; *Storia d'Etiopia*, pp. 155-6, 183 ff.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 155.

<sup>4</sup> See Chapter II, linguistic excursus.

<sup>5</sup> Op. cit., p. 156. See above note 1.

<sup>6</sup> Polotsky (*JSS* 1964, p. 9) has pointed out the misunderstanding implied in Conti Rossini's 'nelle chiese sirio-occidentali'.

<sup>7</sup> No doubt meant to be non-Biblical writings.



of the evidence does not seem to me to add up to so confident a belief in an exclusively Greek *Vorlage*.<sup>1</sup>

Zotenberg's splendid *Catalogue*, so full of precious observations and detailed documentation, contains important information relevant to our present survey (see especially pp. 5-11, 25, etc.). He accepts, it would appear, Dillmann's division into ancient translations made from the LXX and revisions on the basis of later Hebrew-inspired elaborations (see p. 37, above). As an example of the ancient version, translated from the text of the Septuagint, he cites (p. 5) his MS. 3 (= Éth. 102). As an instance of 'la version corrigée' (p. 9) may serve MS. 6 (= Éth. 9). This contains the book of Jeremiah and related writings: according to Zotenberg the chapter division of the Ethiopic text follows that of the Hebrew original; in a large number of passages Ethiopic roots are employed which correspond to the Hebrew ones in the original, and in some instances Hebrew words have been taken over without translation: 574: 111 (Jer. 13: 19), 574: 111 (Jer. 52: 22). Zotenberg adds, however:

Mais la traduction primitive a été exécutée, comme celle des autres parties de la Bible, d'après le texte des Septante, comme le montre un passage du chap. XXV, vers. 10, où la traduction primitive 100711: (100711) 100711, qui rend l'expression 100711 100711 des Septante, se trouve à côté des mots 100711 100711 qui correspondent plus exactement au sens de l'hébreu 100711 100711.

Other manuscripts, such as those on which da Bassano based his edition (see below), have the equivalent of the Hebrew text only.

In a manuscript of the Book of Job (Zotenberg 7 = Éth. 11) we find marginal notes penned by one Marqoryos<sup>2</sup> who appears to have collated the Hebrew text and an Arabic version. That he used the Masoretic text can be seen from his gloss to Job 22: 15: 100711: 100711. He clearly possessed a knowledge of Hebrew, though it is hard to assess its precise extent. Unfortunately, we know nothing about this Mercurius whom Zotenberg describes as 'un savant indigène' (op. cit., p. 11). His *steru* might have been crucial to our assessment of this Hebrew evidence. Zotenberg describes the manuscript as belonging to the fifteenth century; it came from the 'bibliothèque de Séguier'. One Marqorewos or Marqoryos was a disciple of

<sup>1</sup> In *Notis*, p. 4, and *Notis*, pp. 203-4. Conti Rossini affirms that the translation of the New Testament was made from a Syro-occidental recension, while the Old Testament derives from the LXX. He then proceeds to offer a brief evaluation of the merit of the translations of individual books of the canon, but these indications carry too little detail to be of much help.

<sup>2</sup> Zotenberg, *Catalogue*, p. 9.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Lötgren, *David*, p. xiv; Conti Rossini, *Notis*, p. 208.

the famous Ewostatewos; he was the founder of the monastery of Debra Demah and died in 1419; his *gadl* was edited and translated by Conti Rossini.<sup>1</sup> It is, perhaps, rather improbable that he should have possessed a knowledge of Hebrew. The position is different with regard to one Marqorewos who is mentioned among the Ethiopian pilgrim communities abroad;<sup>2</sup> he would have had an opportunity of studying Hebrew and Arabic. On the other hand, Marqorewos is not an uncommon name, and without further information on this glossator his time and place must remain within the realm of speculation.

R. H. Charles<sup>3</sup> considers it 'unquestionable' that the Ethiopic version was made *in the main* from the Greek—in the main, 'for there are certain phenomena in the MSS. which cannot be explained from this hypothesis alone'. Charles adduces some evidence to show that the Hexapla of Origen was used by the Ethiopian translators. As to Dillmann's view (and thenceforth almost universally accepted) that the Greek text was later on corrected from the Hebrew, Charles regards it as 'just as likely' that the transliterations of Hebrew words, which are found in some Ethiopic manuscripts but not in the LXX, as well as other divergences from the Greek text 'may be survivals of the earliest form of the text made directly in many cases from the Hebrew'. If all these Hebraisms were to be ascribed to medieval glossators, how could we account (Charles argues) for their appearance in all manuscripts? Cases in point are Lamentations 3: 12, where the Ethiopic text reflects the Hebrew<sup>4</sup> most closely (and against the LXX), or Ezek. 30: 5 (cf. p. 7, above). Charles believes that the theory of the primitive Ethiopic version containing a large number of words taken directly from the Hebrew is supported by the fact that the Abyssinians received Christianity 'through Aramaean missionaries, and that very many Aramaic words were actually naturalized in order to express the new doctrines of the Christian faith.' He adds, cautiously and rightly, that it will not be possible to settle these questions with any degree of finality until we possess a complete critical edition of the Ethiopic version.

For the New Testament Charles accepts the views associated with Dillmann, Guidi, Hackspill, Conti Rossini, and others: the original version was made from the Greek text which received

<sup>1</sup> G.S.C.O., vols. 33 and 34 (= Aeth. 16 and 17), 1904.

<sup>2</sup> Cerulli, *Expositio in Palestina*, II, 338, 402.

<sup>3</sup> In Hastings's *Dictionary of the Bible*, I, 791 ff.

<sup>4</sup> The resemblance is not confined to 100711: 100711 (Zotenberg, op. cit., p. 10, no. 3) but is patent throughout this verse—and indeed elsewhere.



a series of revisions and corrections on the basis of Arabic versions. These Arabic revisions are principally connected with the activities of Abba Salama 'the translator'<sup>1</sup> whose period has been authoritatively fixed by A. van Lantschoot<sup>2</sup> as 1348-88. His corrections were undoubtedly made 'sur la recension arabe alors la plus en vogue en Egypte'.<sup>3</sup> Lantschoot finds the evidence insufficient to decide the extent to which this revisionary work was associated with Abba Salama in person. It is not even entirely clear which books of the canon were subjected to at least some revision, for in the absence of external testimony we have to rely exclusively on the results of internal criteria which are not always as unambiguous as is desirable. The full complexity of the situation is revealed when one recalls that some ancient codices of the Arabic translation of the Gospels correspond fairly closely to the text of the Peshitta: 'sia che la traduzione in essi contenuta fosse fatta direttamente sul siriano, o sia che la primitiva traduzione dal greco fosse poi corretta secondo la Peshitta'.<sup>4</sup>

Charles follows his predecessors in assigning the Ethiopic Bible translations to the fourth-sixth centuries. Since it was only during the first period of Ethiopic literature that translations were made from the Greek, it may safely be taken for granted that none of the original renderings was later than the end of the sixth century.

Schäfers (op. cit., pp. 170 ff.), on the basis of his work on the Ethiopic text of Jeremiah, came to the conclusion that the Ethiopians received their Bible not from Syria but from Egypt. The reasons which persuaded Schäfers to adopt this view had already been questioned, rightly I believe, by Rahlfs.<sup>5</sup> In a manuscript in the Berlin Library (Orient. Fol. 3067) chapters 46-52 of Jeremiah appear in a rather peculiar form which betrays an inadequate command of Greek. Moreover, Schäfers noticed that the translator used the preposition 'am to render both 'to' and 'from': 'Mir ist nur eine einzige Sprache bekannt, wo 'am beide Bedeutungen haben kann: die koptische'.<sup>6</sup> In fact, however, the same is true of Amharic *ka*, and it seems at least as likely that the Ethiopian translator was influenced by his native tongue, Amharic. Schäfers now deduces from these data

<sup>1</sup> See p. 32, above.

<sup>2</sup> *Alt. Consp. Int. di St. Et.*, pp. 397-401.

<sup>3</sup> Guidi, *MAAL* 1888, p. 13, which also contains further details as well as examples of an Arabic text derived from a Syriac one.

<sup>4</sup> *Ant. Bibl. Italicorum*, pp. 677-8. While I agree with Rahlfs, his objections do not coincide with those adduced by me to the following.

<sup>5</sup> Lantschoot, op. cit., p. 399.

<sup>6</sup> Schäfers, op. cit., p. 171.

that the translator 'must' have possessed a smattering of Greek, Coptic, and Ethiopic (Gə'əz). He 'must', however, have had a different native tongue, and here Schäfers decides in favour of Syriac, mainly because Christianity was introduced into Ethiopia by Syrian (Aramaean) missionaries. Whence did these originate? Not from South Arabia, for Syrians in South Arabia would not have possessed a knowledge of Coptic; hence they must have come from Egypt, and the translator of the Ethiopic version was thus 'ein in Ägypten wohnender Syrer' (Schäfers, p. 170).

The entire reasoning hinges on the inferences to be drawn from the translator's peculiar use of Gə'əz 'am; if Coptic influence is excluded, the entire edifice collapses. Moreover, Schäfers postulates that those last seven chapters must represent the original and ancient version, while the remainder of the book is the result of later revision and elaboration (p. 177). But—as Rahlfs (op. cit., p. 678) has justifiably objected—the last seven chapters of Jeremiah in the Berlin manuscript are a singular phenomenon, confined to only one known manuscript, and do not allow of far-reaching conclusions as regards the entire Bible.

Rahlfs, in his posthumously published article on the Ethiopic Bible translations, took issue with Gildemeister and others who held that the Aramaic loanwords in Gə'əz possessed a specifically Syriac form. Like Polotsky later on,<sup>1</sup> Rahlfs shows that most of these words are 'größtenteils gar nicht echt syrisch, sondern erst von den Juden zu den Syrern gekommen' (p. 675). Not equally cogently argued is Rahlfs's opinion that it was Frumentius himself, in the middle of the fourth century, who began the Ethiopic translation (p. 673). True, I am not aware of any convincing argument that militates against the view that Frumentius may have commenced this long and arduous enterprise, yet Rahlfs does not adduce any positive evidence in support of his position. His article has, however, remained a fragment, and had he himself looked after its publication he might have presented his arguments in a somewhat different manner.

Littmann, in the early years of his career, took a great interest in the problems of the Ethiopic Bible translation.<sup>2</sup> In common with most scholars he thinks that the Gospels were the first books to have been rendered into Gə'əz. This seems to me a very

<sup>1</sup> *JSS* 1964.

<sup>2</sup> It was Littmann who had inspired, and in part supervised, the Octateuch ed. by Boyd of which Genesis, Exodus, and Leviticus only were completed. The excellent chapter on the Bible in his *Geschichte der äthiopischen Literatur*, pp. 203 ff., bears witness to direct preoccupation with these problems.



reasonable assumption, but I know of no specific evidence to support this view which by way of constant repetition has acquired the status of an established fact. The authors of the translation were 'perhaps' Syrian monks who had reached Aksum from South Arabia. Littmann has no doubt that the basis of their rendering was a Greek text, probably in a 'syrisch-okzidentalen' recension current in the region of Antioch. The Gospels were followed by the other books of the New Testament and, eventually, the entire canon of the Old Testament. The translation of the Old Testament was made from a Greek version as well, i.e. the Lucianic recension of the Septuagint: 'sie liegt aller Wahrscheinlichkeit nach der altäthiopischen Übersetzung zugrunde. Daß die äthiopische Version auf die griechische zurückgeht, steht außer Zweifel.'<sup>1</sup> I find it a little difficult to account for the varying degrees of certainty ascribed to these two statements, especially since critical examination of the Ethiopic Bible translations is still not sufficiently advanced to establish beyond reasonable doubt whether the same type of *Vorlage* is common to the entire canon of the Old Testament.<sup>2</sup>

There are many indications, Littmann finds, to suggest that Aramaeans took part in these translations, i.e. the introduction of Aramaic loanwords, especially in the case of theological concepts, and the transcription of proper names. It remains, however, to be established whether these Aramaic loanwords in Ge'ez express 'wirklich speziell christliche Ideen'.<sup>3</sup>

Littmann declares that the individual books of the Bible were translated in quick succession<sup>4</sup> by a number of translators clearly distinguished from each other by their varying attainments. Some books of the Old Testament were, he says, successfully rendered into Ge'ez, others much less so; some translations are literal, others merely reflect the general sense; some translators had a good knowledge of Greek and Ethiopic, others showed many deficiencies in this respect. It would have been important to know to which books of the canon<sup>5</sup> these comments refer and to have them exemplified by at least a few instances. The tenuousness of such generalities is high-lighted by the fact—readily conceded by Littmann—that we are unable to form any

<sup>1</sup> Littmann, *op. cit.*, p. 224.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Ullendorff, *The Ethiopians*, p. 199.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. p. 96, note 6, above, and Chapter II (conclusion), below.

<sup>4</sup> I do not know on what evidence this is based.

<sup>5</sup> Goodwin, *Notes*, p. 4, identifies some of the books, but—as has been pointed out above—proffers no detailed documentation.

valid judgement on the detailed nature of these old translations, as we possess no manuscripts going back to that period or, indeed, to any time prior to the thirteenth century.

Littmann surmises that in the interval between the composition of the old translation (fifth century?) and the thirteenth century many mistakes and textual corruptions must have entered our versions. When, in the fourteenth century, Abba Salama began to revise the Ethiopic text of the Gospels on the basis of an Arabic recension, this movement of revision is likely to have extended beyond the Gospels. Littmann further avers that, since virtually the entire Ethiopic literature since the thirteenth century was under the impact of Arabic, this Arabic influence must also be directly felt in the revision of the text of the Ethiopic Old Testament. One would readily concur with Littmann's doubt that an Ethiopian<sup>1</sup> should have acquired a sufficient command of Hebrew in order to revise the Ge'ez text on the basis of the original. The Hebrew evidence is not, however, confined to a few isolated Hebrew words, but is mainly attested in agreements with the Hebrew original as against the Greek versions, correspondences which Littmann justly describes as 'unzweifelhafte Anklänge an das hebräische Alte Testament' (*op. cit.*, p. 226).

If the Hebrew elements are held to be associated with the period of scriptural revision in the Middle Ages (and I know of no conclusive evidence which forces us to assume so late a date), we are naturally hard put to identify the authors of this Hebrew revision. Littmann is inclined to follow a suggestion by I. Guidi<sup>2</sup> that the Ethiopian translators may have used the Hebrew original very ing by Sa'adya Ga'on which follows the Hebrew original very closely<sup>3</sup> and which would account for textual and even etymological correspondences with the Masoretic text. While this is an attractive proposition that would remove at least some difficulties (not, of course, those concerned with Hebrew transliterations),<sup>4</sup> it has to be realized that we possess no evidence in support of Guidi's suggestion. It would, of course, be possible to

<sup>1</sup> Littmann should have added 'in the thirteenth or fourteenth century', for he does not appear to have considered the possibility of direct Hebrew aid during the Aksumite period, either by Judaized elements or by Aramaic-speaking missionaries with a smattering of Hebrew.

<sup>2</sup> Repeated in *Storia della lett. et.*, p. 25. I cannot at present put my finger on the place where Guidi made this suggestion first—if he made it at all in print and not just privately in *Conti Rinaldi* (*Nouv.*, p. 208).

<sup>3</sup> Cf. also Graf, *Geschichte d. christl. arab. Lit.*, I, 101-3.

<sup>4</sup> Despite paraphrases. It also employs untranslated Hebrew expressions on occasion—no doubt with a view to Sa'adya's Jewish readers.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 38, above.



study Sa'adya's text and compare it with the Ethiopic version. This remains to be done.

Some of the most recent observations on Ethiopic Bible translations come from the magisterial pen of the great Enrico Cerulli: 'che queste traduzioni siano state fatte dal greco in etiopico è un fatto<sup>2</sup> che indica bene l'influenza del greco cristiano agli albori della letteratura etiopica.' The period of this work is given as fourth to seventh centuries by Cerulli who suggests that the Ethiopic translations 'hanno interesse per gli studi di letteratura greca cristiana in quanto conservano testi più antichi, generalmente, dei manoscritti greci che noi oggi abbiamo a disposizione'. This last point is not entirely clear to me in view of the fact that we possess the fourth-century Codex Sinaiticus<sup>3</sup> and Codex Vaticanus as well as the fifth-century Codex Alexandrinus.<sup>4</sup>

Cerulli finds that the Old Testament was rendered into Ethiopic from the Greek of the Septuagint, but neither all at once nor by the same translator. The method of translation and its value differ in the various books of the canon. The New Testament was, according to Cerulli and most of his precursors, translated from the Lucianic text received in the Patriarchate of Antioch. This translation is, 'molto verisimilmente', the work of Syrian monophysite ecclesiastics who had taken refuge in Ethiopia during the fifth and sixth centuries. Cerulli thinks that the books of both Testaments were, after the first translation, subjected to revisions on various occasions, particularly from the fourteenth century onwards. He adds, significantly, that this was done with the aid of 'testi arabo-cristiani [my italics] accolti nel Patriarcato di Alessandria'. Again, I am unaware of the specific evidence for this assumption, but if it were correct it would exclude Guidi's suggestion of Sa'adya's Arabic version having served as a *Vorlage*. However, Cerulli concludes judiciously: 'uno studio sistematico non è stato ancora fatto'—and this applies to a good deal of the 'hadif' which has attached itself, without adequately tested 'ismād's, to the subject of the Ethiopic Bible translations.

No contemporary scholar has rendered greater and more

<sup>1</sup> *Storia della lett. et.*, pp. 23-25.

<sup>2</sup> To what extent this can be considered a fully established 'fact', for the Bible as a whole and in all circumstances, will be discussed in the concluding part of this chapter.

<sup>3</sup> 156 leaves (besides the whole New Testament) in the British Museum.

<sup>4</sup> For other early Greek texts as well as further details of the Grant-Rosley revision of Hastings's one-volume *Dictionary of the Bible* (1902), p. 350.

It is true, of course, that we have no manuscripts of very early 'pure' Lucianic texts; cf. Rahlf, *Septuaginta-Studien*, II, § 66.

meritorious services to the cause of Ethiopic Bible translations than O. Löfgren (see bibliography). In a still unpublished paper,<sup>1</sup> written in 1966, he states: 'Owing to its great antiquity and to the indisputable fact [my italics] that it was originally translated from the Greek, this [Ethiopic] version presents a good deal of interest for the critical study of the text of the Bible, especially that of the Old Testament.' Löfgren further declares that the old Go'az Old Testament is a good witness to the LXX text 'as it was found in uncial codices about the middle of the first millennium'. Yet, the translators were not always able to do justice to their difficult task and, apart from their own shortcomings, many corruptions crept into the text at later periods. Löfgren cites the example of Daniel (which was edited by him) where, in 11: 13-45, eight older manuscripts present a poor text and sizable lacunae, while seven younger manuscripts have a virtually complete text in two different recensions.

It is customary to distinguish two later revisions<sup>2</sup> of the Old Testament text: one has been called the 'vulgar' text and is derived from work on the Arabic version current in Egypt; this is the fourteenth-century revision attributed to Abba Salama and already referred to before.<sup>3</sup> The other has been termed 'academic' and is, according to Löfgren, 'probably younger' and incorporates corrections from the Hebrew original. Löfgren adds that 'nothing is known with certainty about its origin and purpose'. This is, indeed, an understatement of our ignorance, for we know absolutely nothing about this revision—nor, in fact, whether it is a revision at all or, perhaps, part of the original translation process. It is a pity that Löfgren has not, to my knowledge, expressed a detailed opinion on Guidi's Sa'adya conjecture;<sup>4</sup> nor does he appear to have dealt with the objection, raised by Littmann, Guidi, and others, that the Middle Ages can scarcely be described as an era propitious to the exercise of Hebrew learning in Ethiopia.

As to the New Testament, Löfgren accepts the verdict of Guidi and Hackspill that the Go'az Gospels were originally translated

<sup>1</sup> See bibliography and p. 53, above.

<sup>2</sup> Löfgren (loc. cit.) accedes to this custom and terminology; cf. also Schäfers, op. cit., p. 178. A Helder appears to have introduced this nomenclature (*Die antiochenische Bibelübersetzung*, Leipzig, 1904, p. 5). Helder is, incidentally, remarkably precise about dates: according to him, the old Ethiopic translation was made about A.D. 550, the 'vulgar' revision in the sixteenth century and the 'academic' text at the end of the seventeenth century (op. cit., p. 6). I think it can be shown without much difficulty that all three dates are likely to be inaccurate. Helder's views on the Ethiopic Bible translations are set out summarily on pp. 3-8 of his opusculum and lack nothing in confident assurance.

<sup>3</sup> See esp. pp. 22, 44, above.

<sup>4</sup> Apart from a brief reference in his splendid Daniel edition, p. xlv.



from Greek: 'This fundamental thesis was fully confirmed as regards Acts by Montgomery's study<sup>1</sup> in 1934, the only textual-critical investigation of any New Testament book in Go'ez carried out in this century.' Löfgren pronounces as 'quite unsuccessful' Vööbus's recent attempt (see presently) to find a Syriac original as the basis of the primitive text of the Gospels in Ethiopic.

Löfgren is inclined 'to trust in the indigenous tradition that Frumentius, alias Abba Salama senior, was the first translator'. It seems to him 'utterly improbable' that the ordinary Christian in the Aksumite kingdom could have been content (or indeed able) to use Greek texts in the divine service for well over a century. To this Löfgren adds a very important observation: 'It is also difficult to explain why Syrian monks would have used Greek texts and not their own Syriac Bible in translating. In this respect I agree with Vööbus.' Löfgren thus appears to accept the proposition that, if it were shown that Syrian monks were the translators (and that is the view of the great majority of scholars), the almost axiomatically held view of a Greek *Vorlage* would become much more doubtful. We shall have to revert to this point in some detail.

Löfgren's position on dating and *Vorlage* is thus one of considerable consistency. He is not 'convinced' that the text of the famous Paris codex of the Gospels (Zotenberg no. 32) is identical with the primitive translation of the fourth century, for 'secondary readings and harmonizing additions' seem to have found their way into the text during the following dark centuries. Löfgren finally urges that in any future work account should be taken—besides some of the early manuscripts in European libraries—of recently discovered early manuscripts in Ethiopia (such as the Hayq Gospel codex) and of old Go'ez texts in Biblical polyglots executed in Egyptian monasteries.

H. J. Polotsky has recently spoken<sup>2</sup> on the subject of Ethiopic Bible translations. His pronouncement seems to me of such importance that it should be quoted in full:

In the complete absence of direct documentary evidence a given literary text can be attributed to the Aksum period only on internal criteria or on *a priori* grounds. Chief among the former is direct translation from a Greek original: it is assumed, probably rightly, that direct translation from the Greek is out of the question in the Second Period of Ethiopic literature. This applies also to the Ethiopic Bible. On *a priori* grounds it is unlikely that the Bible should have been translated

<sup>1</sup> J. A. Montgomery, *The Ethiopic Text of the Acts of the Apostles*.

<sup>2</sup> At the Manchester Conference of Ethiopian Studies, 1963 (JES 1964, p. 2).

very much later than the introduction of Christianity; and on internal evidence it is clear that the Ethiopic Bible was, in the first instance, translated directly from the Greek. I am aware that some scholars are not yet convinced that such was really the case. I can only say that all the evidence known to me leads to this conclusion, and that no evidence to the contrary has come to my knowledge. But the researches of Dillmann, Guidi, and many others, have made it clear that the old translation is heavily overlaid with the results of different revisions from other sources, including the Syriac Peshitta, as a rule through the medium of Arabic. Therefore, the mere fact that an Aramaic word occurs in our ordinary editions, especially as regards the New Testament, does not yet prove that it formed part of the old translation.

This is, of course, a model of a clear and well-presented argument, and it would be churlish to dissent from the principal conclusions reached by Polotsky. There are, however, one or two points which give rise to some worry: it is argued that the Ethiopic Bible was translated direct from the Greek, at least in the first instance; and again: it is heavily overlaid with the results of different revisions (e.g. Syriac, probably by way of Arabic). While all this may be true, it seems to me wellnigh impossible—at least in the present conditions of manuscript studies and lacking critical editions—to disentangle the various layers, reveal the seams, and assert categorically that the one must be original and the other the result of revision. And on internal grounds, syntax, vocabulary, calques, etc., the situation is often confusing and contradictory—as the conflicting results obtained by scholars demonstrate and as I hope to have shown in my work on the Ethiopic text of Enoch. Polotsky is, of course, right in saying that the mere fact that an Aramaic word occurs in our editions does not yet prove that it formed part of the old translation, but it seems to me that the onus is on him to show that it did not. For in the Aksumite kingdom of the fifth and sixth centuries direct translation from an Aramaic original should not have encountered any insuperable obstacles, while this can scarcely be claimed as regards the fourteenth century, especially as translations at that time were mediated through Arabic. I would not, at this stage, express a preference for any particular stance in this argument, but I venture to suggest that things are not quite so cut and dried as is sometimes averred.

Finally, we must turn to the position taken by A. Vööbus<sup>3</sup>

<sup>3</sup> I imagine Polotsky is here thinking of Vööbus (see bibliography) and the present writer's 'Aramaic *Vorlage* of the Ethiopic Text of Enoch?' and *The Aksumite*, pp. 139, 143.

<sup>4</sup> See the two relevant writings mentioned in the bibliography, abbreviated in the following as *Spurn* and *Early Versions*, respectively.



who favours a Syriac *Vorlage* to replace the customary view of a Greek original underlying the Ethiopic translation of the Gospels. This is a minority opinion, though by no means a completely isolated one.<sup>1</sup> F. C. Burkitt had already reached the conclusion that an old Syriac version had also been used for the Ethiopic translation.<sup>2</sup> Vööbus maintains, not altogether unfairly, that for many years now no independent examination of the evidence has been carried out, and scholars have usually been content to rehearse the results at which Dillmann or Hackspill had arrived close on a century ago. Even the most favourable circumstances, i.e. the collection of all variants peculiar to the Ethiopic translation, will not necessarily bring about a solution, for even if we are able to detect in those variants a good deal of old Syriac material, the protagonists of the Greek thesis can point to many instances (as Vööbus concedes) which follow the Greek text so slavishly that they reflect even the Greek order of words. The problem is not only to draw the right conclusions from this complex and seemingly irreconcilable state of affairs, but to extend the range of internal as well as external criteria and to seek fresh clues which may help us to break out from what appears to be a vicious circle.

Vööbus argues—and here he follows the majority view—that Christianity under Frumentius had not spread very far by the second half of the fourth century. Ethiopian sources, and in particular the Synaxarium,<sup>3</sup> testify to the great impetus which the young Christian faith received from the advent of the famous Nine Saints. They brought about the full christianization of the country by the late fifth or early sixth century. That they were Syrian monks has been generally assumed,<sup>4</sup> and it is likely that they came to Ethiopia by way of South Arabia,<sup>5</sup> possibly as a consequence of the anti-Christian excesses by Du Nuwas.<sup>6</sup> They founded monasteries, were instrumental in the

<sup>1</sup> Vööbus claims that Gildemeister 'nahm eine syrische Herkunft an' (*Speren*, p. 8; *Early Versions*, p. 249), but as far as I can see from Gildemeister's letter to Gregory (cf. p. 40, above), Gildemeister speaks of Syriac translators and Syriac linguistic influences—yet he assumes an original that is predominantly Greek.

<sup>2</sup> *Encyclopaedia Biblica*, vol. iv, col. 501a. Vööbus (*Speren*, p. 8) claims much more than a yet older Ethiopic version of the Gospels made from the Greek. . . . A few traces survive of again agrees with Syriac against almost all other authorities, though it usually follows the Greek or the Arabic. . . . (*Enopel. Bibl.* iv, col. 501a).

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Guidi, *Synaxarium*, 17 Sans; Budge, *Book of the Saints of the Ethiopian Church*, index in vol. iv (under names of the Nine Saints). Dillmann, *Zur Geschichte . . .*, pp. 24 ff.

<sup>4</sup> Guidi, 'La chiesa etiopica', *OM* 1902, p. 106.  
<sup>5</sup> Vööbus, *Early Versions*, p. 247; Hackspill, *op. cit.*, p. 135.  
<sup>6</sup> These were apparently directed at monophysites in particular; cf. J. Ryckmans, 'Le Christianisme en Arabie . . .', p. 448.

spread of Christianity, and are generally credited with the translation of the Scriptures into Go'az.<sup>1</sup>

Vööbus inveighs against Hackspill's theory<sup>2</sup> that the Syrian monks carried with them the Holy Scriptures in Greek and not in their own language. On the face of it, this does seem a trifle improbable, but Hackspill has three fairly weighty arguments: (1) proper names exhibit the Greek and not the Aramaic forms; (2) there are a number of words which have entered the Ethiopic version in their Greek and untranslated garb; (3) some mistranslations can only be traced back to a Greek source. Vööbus counters these strong propositions by querying the notion that Hackspill's arguments lead us to assume, necessarily, a Greek *Vorlage* for the original translation. Instead, he claims that a Greek text may have been used for the revisions which we know to have been carried out at much later periods.

Vööbus's point does, however, meet some serious obstacles: it seems highly improbable that fourteenth-century revisions were undertaken on the basis of a Greek original. The linguistic and cultural conditions of medieval Ethiopia scarcely favour such a proposition. Moreover, we possess at least some indications that Arabic texts were employed for much of this work; and even the closest Arabic approximation to the Greek original could not have produced some of the Ethiopic peculiarities noticed by Hackspill.

It seems to me likely that neither Hackspill's nor Vööbus's (see presently) positions do justice to the complexities of the situation. Hackspill's manuscript (Zotenberg 32) is probably the oldest Go'az Gospel text known to us at present (thirteenth century); but this does not mean, of course, that it represents a particularly ancient recension or, for that matter, that the work of translation was necessarily carried out on one *Vorlage* only, that not more than one attempt was made, and that any given manuscript may not incorporate the results of varying strands and translational traditions.

Vööbus invites attention to specifically Syriac translation techniques<sup>3</sup> and modes of transliteration;<sup>4</sup> he also refers to textual corruptions which can best be explained from a Syriac version. Löfgren has said<sup>5</sup> that, if the Bible translations were made by Syrian missionaries, it would indeed be hard to explain why they would not use their own Syriac texts. Vööbus makes the same point by showing the great attachment of Syrian

<sup>1</sup> Guidi, *loc. cit.* For other sources cf. Vööbus, *op. cit.*  
<sup>2</sup> *Early Versions*, p. 253.

<sup>3</sup> *Op. cit.*, p. 136.  
<sup>4</sup> p. 50, above.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 41, above.



divines to their own language and writings<sup>1</sup> and refers to a passage in the *Maṣḥafa Məṣṣir* (Zotenberg MS. 113, fol. 63a) which relates that the Syrian monks had brought along ሙጽሐፍተ፡ ሐገሙ፡ ሙርከተሙ፡ 'the books of their rites and service'. That these clerics produced translations of their own literature which had at times little relevance to conditions in Ethiopia had already been demonstrated by Guidi<sup>2</sup> who drew attention to the *Qerillos* which is aimed against the Nestorians in particular, although there were no Nestorians in the Aksumite kingdom. Vööbus infers from this, fairly, that these Syrians 'simply translated works and writings which suited their interests'.<sup>3</sup>

Vööbus also deals with a number of specific instances in the Gospels<sup>4</sup> which, he maintains, can be elucidated only from a Syriac original. More important, perhaps, is an examination which Vööbus has pioneered and which may well open up valuable vistas: Since we possess no Ethiopic manuscripts prior to the thirteenth century and few, if any, that have not been subject to later revisions, it is just conceivable that some old readings and quotations may accidentally have been preserved in non-Biblical Ethiopic manuscripts which have escaped the hands of the revisers. This seems indeed a promising line; one example must suffice:

Matthew 23: 13 (14):

ለሰ፡ ተለጽጠ፡ ሆይ፡ ገደ፡ ለሰላላ፡ ሐገተ፡ ሙገገሥተ፡ ሰማያተ፡፡

You who close before the face of man the gate of the kingdom of heaven.

With this one should compare the usual text:

ለሰ፡ ተጽጠ፡ ሙገገሥተ፡ ሰማያተ፡ ሙሐተ፡ ገደ፡ ለሰላላ፡፡

ὅτι κλείετε τὴν βασιλείαν τῶν οὐρανῶν ἔμπροσθεν τῶν ἀνθρώπων

Vööbus claims that the reading preserved in the Ethiopic hagiographic text 'ist den altsyrischen Handschriften, die noch mehr altertümliches Gut enthalten, nicht fremd gewesen'.<sup>5</sup> Unfortunately, he does not cite the actual Syriac text, which would have been helpful and instructive.<sup>6</sup>

Vööbus thus avers that in these Ethiopic hagiographa we encounter remnants of a textual type which have otherwise been removed by the various revisions. The Ethiopian monks who

<sup>1</sup> Op. cit., p. 255.

<sup>2</sup> Op. cit., pp. 257 ff.

<sup>3</sup> *Sperber*, p. 25.

<sup>4</sup> *DM* 1920, pp. 126-7.

<sup>5</sup> *Comiti Rosmini, Acta S. Basilidis Mucronis (C.S.C.O.)*, p. 22.

<sup>6</sup> For other examples of this kind cf. *Sperber*, pp. 23-29.

composed these writings must, however, have used Gospel manuscripts of an early vintage which have now disappeared: 'Eine Phase der Textgeschichte tritt vor unsere Augen, die uns etwas von der älteren Periode und Entwicklung bloßlegt.' In the list of variants, Vööbus maintains, will be found readings which one seeks in vain in the sphere of Greek manuscripts but which can be encountered in the fertile soil of old Syriac manuscripts. All these indications, cumulatively, favour the assumption of a Syriac *Vorlage* of the Ethiopic Bible translations. We shall see in the following to what extent Vööbus's claims can be accepted.

We shall now summarize the findings of this section and set out some tentative conclusions for the Old Testament, New Testament, and Apocrypha and Pseudepigrapha.

#### *Tentative conclusions*

The Old Testament adds at least one complication which is absent from the formulation of the problem as regards the New Testament: in the case of the latter we may have to reckon with a Greek or possibly a Syriac *Vorlage*, but the former was written in Hebrew, and in addition to the Greek and Syriac translations—Septuagint, Peshitta, and other versions—we may have to take into account either passages of direct translation from the original into Ethiopic (or, possibly, by way of Arabic) or revision and correction from a Hebrew text. With this important exception, the questions which are posed by the G'əz rendering of both Testaments are not markedly different, and many of the conclusions reached for the one will frequently apply to the other as well.

It has been said before, and must be reiterated once more at this point, that no views on the time, authorship, and *Vorlage* of the Ethiopic Bible translations can lay claim to any measure of finality. The work of editing remains incomplete, and even the best manuscripts in our possession do not go back beyond the thirteenth century—and most of them are of much more recent date. External sources are almost completely silent, and internal criteria are frequently open to widely varying interpretations.

I am aware of no historical or linguistic aspects that would preclude us from assuming that some work of translating the Scriptures into Ethiopic followed soon after the introduction of

<sup>1</sup> *Sperber*, p. 29.



Christianity into Ethiopia in the fourth century. In so far as translation from Greek can be proved, it is likely to have occurred in the first century after the Christian conversion in Aksum—and probably not later than the end of the fifth century A.D. Modern scholars are unanimous that the standard of Greek shown by the translations is not impressive, and the conditions which would have maintained even those minimum linguistic requirements for any moderately successful translation rapidly deteriorated. This is not to assert that Greek was no longer used for translational work after the end of the fifth century, but it does seem likely that it was not then taken as the sole and exclusive basis. The evidence certainly encourages the opinion that, with the advent of the Syrian missionaries in the fifth and sixth centuries, Syriac translations were employed in conjunction with the Greek text.

I fail to understand the position of those who claim either an exclusively Greek or an exclusively Syriac *Vorlage*. It seems to me that the historical circumstances and a linguistic analysis of the texts already edited rule out such a dogmatic option for either posture. Some respectable pieces of evidence can be adduced in favour of each of several hypotheses, but it seems that reality was a good deal more complex and eclectic than is sometimes conceded, and the linguistic facts refuse to fall into neat patterns. If the same book—or even chapter—offers clear evidence of, say, Greek, Syriac, and Hebrew elaborations, nothing that has so far come to my notice would prevent us from assuming that all three might have been employed, in one form or another, directly or indirectly, by a team of translators. On the face of it, work on one single linguistic *Vorlage* was, perhaps, the exception rather than the rule in the peculiar circumstances that obtained in the Aksumite kingdom of the fourth–sixth centuries.

It seems to me that only such a view of the situation can do justice to the intrinsic facts as well as to their varying interpretation by scholars. When Dillmann speaks of the translators' poor knowledge of Greek or of some surprising correspondences of words and sense as between the Hebrew and Gə'əz texts; when Conti Rossini refers to writings that have passed direct from Syriac into Ethiopic, and Zotenberg and Littmann find in the Gə'əz rendering remarkable reflections of the Hebrew of the Old Testament; when Charles speaks of survivals of the earliest form of the text made directly in many cases from the Hebrew, though the bulk of the translation was made 'in the main' from the Greek (Polotsky: 'in the first instance'), then the general

impression inexorably emerges that any one hypothesis is unable to carry the full burden of all these qualifications and reservations. Nor, I would submit, can these difficulties all be relegated to the period of revisions from the thirteenth or fourteenth centuries onwards.

That such revisions did take place is not in question, but they were, I believe, nearly all due to the influence of Arabic. Direct Syriac or Hebrew influences (from different quarters, of course) can readily be accounted for in the period from the fourth to perhaps the seventh century; they cannot be made credible in the fourteenth or fifteenth centuries. Löfgren has rightly said<sup>1</sup> that, if Syrian monks were the translators, it would be difficult to see why they would not have used the Scriptures in their own language as a basis. The disagreement between Löfgren and Voobus, on one hand, and the *Vorlage*-discrepancies which may even occur in the same chapter, on the other, can be explained and resolved on the assumption of dual original texts—used to varying degrees and no doubt in accordance with the difficulty or smoothness of the passages concerned. In purely statistical and quantitative terms, Greek must probably be considered the source *par excellence*.

Nöldeke and Rodinson have pointed out<sup>2</sup> that the translators must have had the assistance of Jews in all those cases where a Hebrew original is reflected in the Ethiopic translation. There is no difficulty in seeking such helpers among the Jewish or Judaized immigrants from South Arabia in any period till about the seventh century. On the other hand, the conditions cannot possibly be adjudged suitable for large-scale Hebrew revisions or corrections in the late Middle Ages. Hence I find it impossible to accept the so-called 'academic' revision. The elements which the latter is alleged to contain are either old or part of an isolated freak phenomenon which can never be excluded, but which is far removed from a systematic re-examination of the Scriptures. The mysterious Mercurius<sup>3</sup> who had some knowledge of the Masoretic text may well have been such a freak.

In contrast to this, we possess good evidence, internal as well as external, of revisions on the basis of Arabic texts. The originator of this movement appears to have been the fourteenth-century Abba Salama, 'the translator'.<sup>4</sup> In this context it is an

<sup>1</sup> It will be recalled that Löfgren favours very early translation activity under Frumentius on the basis of a Greek original.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 37, above.

<sup>3</sup> See pp. 42–43, above.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. pp. 38 and 44, above.



urgent desideratum to examine Sa'adya's Hebrew-Arabic version and to find out whether it was ever used as a base-text which might also account for any of the Hebrew approximations. I would hazard the guess that Löfgren's doubts about this are likely to be confirmed.<sup>1</sup> As during the Aksumite period Gə'əz drew its literary strength from Greek models, scriptural or otherwise, so during the Middle Ages Arabic provided the material from which translations and adaptations were made. Among the Christians of Egypt Coptic had gradually been replaced by Arabic, and it was in this language that a fresh blossoming of literary activity occurred in Egypt at a time when the restoration of the Solomonic dynasty had prepared the ground for a high degree of cultural receptiveness in Ethiopia. No doubt the arrival of the Coptic archbishops (and Abba Salama and his retinue offer a notable example) had at times a salutary effect in keeping Ethiopia in touch with literary trends in other parts of the Christian Orient.<sup>2</sup> Coptic monks of the Abuna's suite assisted in the interpretation and translation of such writings. The oral influence of Coptic priests, who acted as 'accoucheurs' in the delivery of these renderings, can be detected—as Guidi, Cerulli, and others have recognized—in cases where the Ethiopic version deviates from the Arabic *Vorlage* and approximates more closely to the Coptic original. In those instances the Coptic passage was remembered, but the actual text used for the preparation of the Gə'əz version was in Arabic. There is no evidence that Coptic texts had any direct part in the rendering of the Gə'əz Bible.

The complexities of Greek, Syriac, Hebrew, and Arabic originals, used either for translation or revision, have been magisterially sketched by Löfgren in his justly renowned Daniel edition (pp. xliii-1) which may serve as a model of this type of text-critical study. Much of what Löfgren has found out for Daniel will, *mutatis mutandis*, apply to many other Biblical books as well, though the quality and coherence of these translations do exhibit very marked variations and distinctions. In paying sincere tribute to the excellence of Löfgren's editions, one need not be committed to accepting all of Löfgren's views as to the genesis and later development of these translations. If Löfgren's rejection of the 'Annahme zweier Vorlagen' (op. cit., p. xlv) is limited to the idea of simultaneous work on an Arabic and a Syriac text, I would readily concur; but if this repudiation is

<sup>1</sup> Daniel, p. xlvf.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Cerulli, *Storia della lett. et.*, pp. 31-33.

meant to apply to all work on dual sources (e.g. Greek and Syriac), I would not feel able to follow him in this.

A few words must be said about the four-volume Asmara edition of the Ethiopic Old Testament prepared by Francesco da Bassano<sup>3</sup> (well known for his earlier Tigrinya dictionary) with the help of several Ethiopian clerics, chief among them Abba Kidanä Maryam Kasa (p. xi), later on Bishop of the Catholics of Ethiopian rite. The title-page states (in Gə'əz) that the edition is based on collation with ancient manuscripts and with editions in Syriac, Greek, and Arabic, while the dedication to Pope Pius XI includes the information: '... Vetus Testamentum aethiopico idiomate conscriptum ex vetustioribus optimisque codicibus in Erythraea, Abyssinia, Parisiis, Londinis ... collectis. ...'. This is not, of course, a critical edition with an apparatus of variant readings but a practical tool intended for the use of the Ethiopian people. Beyond that, the edition represents the first complete publication of the Gə'əz Old Testament and is thus also of inestimable value to scholars.<sup>4</sup>

On p. ix of his Ethiopic preface da Bassano explains that it was his aim to publish the type of text which appears in the finest and oldest manuscripts from the time of Frumentius and the Nine Saints—certainly an ambitious undertaking which is unlikely to have been capable of fulfilment. For this purpose he collected not only printed texts but also the oldest manuscripts available in the churches and monasteries of Ethiopia. Unfortunately, he does not tell us from which places he obtained those manuscripts and what their approximate dating was. In addition, da Bassano also used photographic reproductions of Ethiopic Old Testament manuscripts in the British Museum and the Bibliothèque Nationale. In all this work he had the aid of indigenous priests who were versed in Gə'əz and in the study of the Holy Scriptures. However, his principal object was the collection of manuscripts and their comparison with *ግድግዳ*, *ግድግዳ*, *ግድግዳ*, *ግድግዳ*, *ግድግዳ*, *ግድግዳ*, *ግድግዳ*, *ግድግዳ*, *ግድግዳ*, *ግድግዳ* with the Septuagint and with other Syriac and Arabic texts'. He paid particular attention to those manuscripts which in the sixteenth century were revised according to Syriac<sup>5</sup> and Arabic texts. Since the Books of Maccabees were composed after the translation of the LXX (so da Bassano declares), he himself had

<sup>3</sup> *ግድግዳ*, *ግድግዳ*; Asmara 1922/3-1923/6.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Löfgren's excellent review in *AIÖ* 1929, pp. 174-80.

<sup>5</sup> I do not know why da Bassano singled out the sixteenth century in particular and, above all, what evidence he possesses for revision on the basis of Syriac texts at that period.



to translate them from Greek into Ethiopic, using some British Museum Ethiopic manuscripts which contain a Vulgate-based text of these books.<sup>1</sup>

Löfgren (loc. cit.) describes da Bassano's work as largely based on old manuscript tradition offering an eclectic or conflated text. Chapter and verse division follows the Vulgate, 'sonst aber habe ich keine Beeinflussung durch diese Quelle bemerkt'. Löfgren has carried out a detailed comparison of the Asmara edition with his own manuscripts used for his work on Daniel and some of the minor prophets. His results coincide with my own conclusions which are derived from less detailed—yet more extended—comparisons, the fruit of a quarter of a century's desultory reading. Da Bassano's principal aim was to produce a readily comprehensible text which would be of practical benefit to the people of Ethiopia. Hence it was essential to remove, as far as possible, all *lectiones difficiliores* and to replace them by readings which made 'good sense'. For this purpose the editor adjusted, according to Löfgren, 'die alte Übersetzung dem *textus receptus*'. I agree with Löfgren that the result of this procedure was a 'Mischtext', but I would find it hard to detect any real evidence that da Bassano's version stands somewhere half-way between the 'vulgar' and 'academic' recensions. In any event, considering its limited and specific object the Asmara Old Testament was a fine achievement.

As for the New Testament, I have little doubt that the massive evidence mustered by Hackspill is sufficient to prove a predominantly Greek *Vorlage*, at least for the famous M.S. B.N. 32. This does not, of course, establish beyond reasonable doubt that other manuscript traditions must necessarily have a similar provenance. Nor does the fact that MS. 32 appears to be the oldest Go'az Gospel manuscript at present in our possession accord to it *as such* a position of precedence, for it is perfectly feasible that younger manuscripts might derive from a more ancient filiation. Vööbus has undoubtedly shown up a number of loopholes and difficulties, but even cumulatively they seem to me to fall short of statistical certitude. The most important and promising aspect of Vööbus's work concerns the occurrence of Biblical quotations in Ethiopic literature. A systematic exploitation of this vast mine may well bring to light further divergences from the received text which may go back to an earlier pre-revision version. If most of those variants can be shown to

<sup>1</sup> Probably Wright, B.M. xv. 8; xxviii. 4; xxxi. 2. Wright (p. 14) describes the text as translated (in modern times) from the Vulgate.

derive from an old Syriac recension, as Vööbus claims, then our views will inevitably have to undergo some modification. But that stage has not been reached yet.

*Vorlage*-problems naturally affect the Apocrypha and Pseudo-epigrapha as well. New editions of Jubilees<sup>1</sup> and Enoch<sup>2</sup> are at present under preparation, and both will benefit from the discoveries of Hebrew and Aramaic fragments, respectively, at Qumran. These fragments—and the Aramaic ones in particular—may have a direct bearing on the vexed question of the language(s) from which the translators into Go'az worked. On the basis of a pilot study<sup>3</sup>, carried out on the Ethiopic version and the Greek and Aramaic fragments extant, the likelihood of direct translation from Aramaic was increasingly pressed upon me by the evidence proffered by vocabulary (especially in the case of mis-translations)<sup>4</sup> and syntax. Yet, it will be prudent to await the results accruing from the new edition as a whole.

In presenting the arguments for direct Ethiopic translation from the Aramaic text of Enoch it was not part of my case to claim that no Greek text was available to the translators or that there exists no passage of the Ethiopic text which can, in fact, be most conveniently explained by assuming a Greek basis. One need only think of the misreading in Enoch 22: 2 where the context seems to require 'hollow places' and where the Ethiopic version is likely to have mistaken *καὶ* for *καλοὶ* (ወፍፍተ). But in the few instances of this type the Greek text appears to have been primarily invoked as a translation aid, perhaps in obscure

<sup>1</sup> See the fine paper on the projected new edition of the Ethiopic Book of Jubilees by W. Baer and R. Zuurmond in JSS, Spring 1964, pp. 67-74.

<sup>2</sup> By M. Black and Edward Ullendorff. Cf. my 'An Aramaic *Vorlage* of the Ethiopic Text of Enoch?'

In that article I also touched briefly upon the 'son of man' problem (p. 265), and there seemed to exist at least a remote possibility that the Ethiopic phrasing might shed some light on this expression. On re-examining the question in conjunction with G. Vermes's important study on 'The Use of Bar Nuh/Bar Nuhia in Jewish Aramaic' it now appears to me that the Ethiopic evidence has little or nothing to contribute and that it remains essentially an Aramaic (Hebrew) issue.

<sup>3</sup> See preceding footnote.

<sup>4</sup> Two fairly typical examples:

In Enoch 5: 9 the context and parallelism obviously require the sense, 'And they shall not again transgress, nor shall they on all the days of their life.' This is indeed what the Greek text renders by the verbs *παρὰμνησθῶσιν* and *ἀδιδράσωσιν*. The Ethiopic version, however, text renders by the verb *ገገገሎሙ* and *ገገገሎሙ*. The Ethiopic version, however, translates the second verb *ገገገሎሙ*; 'they shall not be judged' = *ed ገገገሎሙ* which can neither be a rendering nor a misreading of the common *ἀδιδράσωσιν*. It is probable, therefore, that the error arose from the Semitic *Vorlage* in which the Go'az translator seems to have mistaken *ḡg* 'to judge' for *ḡl* 'to sin'. It is equally obvious that this mistake cannot be the result of a later revision but must be the product of the original version.

In chapter 97: 3, for 'this accursed valley' the Greek text simply transcribes Semitic *Wāḡ* as *Wāḡ* (ἡ ἀκαθάρτης), while the Ethiopic understands correctly (surely not by way of Greek!) *Wāḡ* as 'valley'.



or difficult places. Examination of the textual evidence has, however, led me to this tentative and provisional conclusion: the nature of some of the errors in the versions and attempts at a retranslation into the Semitic original have encouraged the view (now also reinforced by the Dead Sea fragments) that the bulk of Enoch was written in Aramaic but that there existed a number of passages or admixtures in Hebrew. And it was when encountering those Hebrew parts that the Syrian translators of Enoch had recourse to the Greek version, while the Aramaic bulk of the text could generally be rendered into Ethiopic without the intermediacy of Greek. Nor should one dismiss the possibility that the Aramaic-based translation was subsequently subjected to revision or retouching on the strength of the Greek version. The evidence in support of direct translation from Aramaic into Go'az is of necessity cumulative and can only be fully accepted if sustained throughout the entire work—as indeed I hope to demonstrate elsewhere in the not too distant future.<sup>1</sup>

#### *Bible translations into some modern Ethiopian languages*

Translations of the entire Bible have hitherto been published in Amharic and Tigrinya (*tigrīña*) only. In Tigre we possess the New Testament, Psalms, and Isaiah, but it is reported that a Tigre translation of the complete Bible is now in an advanced state of preparation.<sup>2</sup> There is virtually nothing in the remaining Semitic Ethiopian languages. It is, perhaps, rather remarkable that, if one of our principal difficulties in discussing the Go'az Bible translations (made a millennium and a half ago) was the identity of the language on which the translation was based, a similar problem should be encountered as regards the modern Ethiopian languages whose rendering does not go back more than a century and a half. Of course, we do possess some external information, but we must also have recourse to internal criteria. Both together throw an interesting light on the problems with which we have been wrestling in the preceding pages.

The history of the first translation of the Bible into Amharic is a romantic and exciting story which deserves to be better known among *ṭhiopisants*. The fullest account is contained in

<sup>1</sup> The work on the new edition of Enoch has hitherto been held up by the failure of those in charge of the Aramaic Qumran fragments to arrange for prompt publication of those texts.  
<sup>2</sup> This information has been confirmed by the British and Foreign Bible Society to whom I am much obliged for a good deal of helpful information.

William Jowett,<sup>1</sup> *Christian Researches in the Mediterranean* (London, 1822); this book has an extremely interesting and valuable chapter on 'Abyssinians', running to some sixty pages.<sup>2</sup> Jowett thinks that 'though the province which bears the name of Amhara is small, its dialect is spoken through at least half of Abyssinia' (p. 197). When Jowett visited Cairo, in about 1820, he met there the French Consul, M. Asselin de Cherville, who owned a translation, in manuscript, of the entire Bible into Amharic. M. Asselin had become friendly with an elderly Ethiopian from Gondar;<sup>3</sup> his name was Abu Rumi (at times it is also given as Abi Rūh<sup>4</sup> or Abu Rūh or Abba Rūh Habessin<sup>5</sup>) which appears to be an Arabicized corruption of Abraham. According to Asselin, 'Abu Rumi', a master of the literature of his country, had been the instructor of James Bruce<sup>6</sup> and Sir William Jones.<sup>7</sup> Asselin, when he had become convinced of the knowledge and literary competence of his

<sup>1</sup> Of the Church Missionary Society; 1787-1855.

<sup>2</sup> Pp. 171-229, including sections on the early establishment of Christianity in Ethiopia; the dependence of the Church on the Coptic Patriarch; the ancient Confession of Faith (by the Coptic Patriarch); the modern Creed of the Abyssinian Church; the Ethiopic Scriptures; the Amharic Version of the Scriptures (pp. 197-204); the Tigre (i.e. Tigrīña) Version of the Scriptures; the encouragement of Abyssinian Learning. Thoughts on a Mission to Abyssinia. The present writer, as the first incumbent of a Chair of Ethiopian Studies, may perhaps be forgiven for quoting a passage from Jowett's book which anticipates the foundation of this Chair by close on a century and a half (at a time when Oxford and Cambridge were the only two English universities): '... It is worthy of consideration, however, whether, in entering, with such ample means and such fair hopes, upon another Continent [i.e. Africa], it may not be expedient to contemplate some New Establishment, founded with an express view to those ends which have been already stated.'

<sup>3</sup> The endowment of an Abyssinian Professorship, with Three Scholarships, in either or both of the English Universities, would display a generous and enlightened consideration of the wants of Africa.

<sup>4</sup> The amount of Literature already in our possession, with this view, is as follows: in Ethiopic (the Ecclesiastical Language) the whole Bible, and various Liturgies and Histories—in Amharic (the reigning modern dialect) the whole Bible.

<sup>5</sup> Eight dialects, as has been already noticed, (one of which, that of Tigre, has been in a considerable degree elucidated) will afford ample scope for the Researches of an Abyssinian Scholar... (op. cit., p. 215).

Jowett goes on to express the hope that public opinion on this measure would ripen. Nor should his proposal be understood as 'deranging the admirable system of Classics, and Scientific Education... by giving undue prominence to Oriental Studies... We would gladly see the rewards of Hebrew, Arabic, and Abyssinian Scholarship presented... to the newly-graduated Student... This is a remarkably prescient disquisition on the place and value of Oriental studies at university level.

<sup>6</sup> According to Isenberg's informant, Dabūra Maṭwos, he was 'a native of Godjam' (*Dictionary of the Amharic Language*, p. iii).

<sup>7</sup> Cf. Fumagalli, *Bibliografia Etiopea*, p. 144.

<sup>8</sup> Isenberg, loc. cit.

It is amusing to note that the obscurist of Thomas Pell Platt (1798-1852; orientalist, librarian of the British and Foreign Bible Society, and editor of the Bible in Amharic) writes in the *Dictionary of National Biography* (p. 1290): 'in 1844 Platt edited an Amharic version of the Bible, using the translation of Abba Rūh for the O.T., and that of Abu Rumi Habessin<sup>5</sup> for the N.T.'

<sup>9</sup> I cannot recall Bruce mentioning an Ethiopian by some such name.

<sup>10</sup> 1746-94; the famous orientalist.



Abyssinian friend, set him to translate the entire Bible into Amharic. As an Ethiopic version was already in existence,<sup>1</sup> the new Amharic rendering was to become 'a point of comparison, in order to assign the differences between the Vernacular and the Ancient Language' (p. 199).

Fortunately, Asselin has left an account of the way the translation was executed:<sup>2</sup> the work occupied him and Abu Rumi for fully ten years (1808-18).<sup>3</sup> Every Tuesday and Saturday his door was shut to all visitors when he read with 'my Abyssinian, slowly, and with the utmost attention, every verse of the Sacred Volume, in the Arabic Version<sup>4</sup> which we were about to translate'. But we are not told from which Arabic version the rendering was made. However,

all those words which were either abstruse, difficult, or foreign to the Arabic, I explained to him, by the help of the Hebrew Original, the Syriac Version, or the Septuagint; as well as a few Glossaries and Commentaries, which I had gathered about me: but he also found often the key to them in the Ethiopic, or Gheez. . . .<sup>5</sup> After having finished the translation of one Book, we collated it once more, before we proceeded farther.

This is helpful as far as it goes and offers a lesson, I would suggest, for an assessment of the translation—*mutatis mutandis*—of the Scriptures into Go'az, particularly as regards the question of a single *Varlage*. But there remain a number of doubtful factors: we possess no reliable information on the quality and level of Asselin's or Abu Rumi's knowledge of Arabic, nor, for that matter, on the standard of the Ethiopian's Go'az or the Frenchman's Hebrew, Syriac, and Greek. And critical study of the Amharic Bible is not sufficiently advanced to throw any light on this question. Asselin's account of the genesis of the Amharic translation is corroborated<sup>6</sup> by a note in the B. & F.B.S.'s catalogue which refers to the rendering having been made from Arabic, with external arrangement according to the Vulgate, and 'collateral help' from the Hebrew,<sup>7</sup> Greek, and Syriac.

<sup>1</sup> Not, of course, in print.

<sup>2</sup> These dates (which I cannot find anywhere else) are given in an extensive footnote on p. 14 of Dr. C. Goldenberg's very brilliant Ph.D. thesis (Jerusalem, 1966—in Hebrew) on the Amharic tense-system.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. p. 91, note 1, below.

<sup>4</sup> We do not know, of course, what Go's Bible manuscripts were available at Cairo at that time and to which of them Abu Rumi may have had access (cf. Zaruwa, *Bib. Ethiop.*, p. 196). It is also possible that he may have known by heart at least some portions of the Ethiopic Bible.

<sup>5</sup> Though the independence of this confirmation must remain somewhat doubtful.

<sup>6</sup> Zeisberg, *Catalogue*, p. 21, avers that Platt's 1844 edition of the Amharic Bible (see below) had introduced changes 'en beaucoup d'endroits' and is now much closer to the

This collateral help was given by T. P. Platt<sup>1</sup> and Samuel Lee.<sup>2</sup>

M. Asselin de Cherville was quite lyrical in his description of the translation which

'respects a language almost unknown; and a translation absolutely unique, which unheard-of circumstances have combined to procure, and which doubtless will not present themselves a second time. For I must confess to you, that if unhappily a single Book were wanting, I should now find it impossible to supply the defect.

I owe this entire collection . . . to the kindness of Providence, . . . to the gratitude and strong attachment of this venerable Old Man [Abu Rumi] whom I had snatched from the arms of death, and who had devoted to me the remainder of a life which he considered to be mine . . .' (Jowett, *op. cit.*, p. 200).

M. Asselin was anxious to dispose of the work 'on terms which would re-imburse his expenses', and he knew that both the Church Missionary Society and the British and Foreign Bible Society would 'justly deem the Manuscript in question of the highest importance'. In these circumstances Jowett was entrusted by the B. & F.B.S. with discretionary powers to bring negotiations to a successful conclusion. 'This was happily effected, on the 10th of April 1820; on terms which appeared to be equitable to all parties.' These terms involved the payment to Asselin of £1,250<sup>3</sup>—a truly prodigious sum 150 years ago, especially in a low-cost area such as Egypt. Jowett, however, was extremely pleased with the result of his mission and declared that 'the publication of the Amharic Scriptures will be as the lighting of a Pharos on the inhospitable shores of the Red Sea' (p. 203).

The manuscript which Jowett had acquired contains 9,539 pages in small octavo, written in the fine hand of 'Abu Rumi', and covers the entire Bible. It was submitted for scrutiny to Professor Samuel Lee, and Thomas Pell Platt prepared it for publication with commendable speed: the Gospels were published in 1824,<sup>4</sup> the entire New Testament in 1829,<sup>5</sup> and the

Hebrew text. This is undoubtedly the case, as comparison with the Abu Rumi manuscript shows.

<sup>1</sup> See above, note 3 on p. 63.

<sup>2</sup> 1783-1832, Professor of Arabic at Cambridge (from 1819) and later Regius Professor of Hebrew (1831), a renowned polyglot.

<sup>3</sup> So Goldenberg, *loc. cit.* The B. & F.B.S. have kindly confirmed from their records that £1,250 was, in fact, the sum paid to M. Asselin.

<sup>4</sup> *Evangelia Sacra*, sub auspiciis D. Asselini, rerum gallicarum apud Aegyptios procuratoris, in lingua amharicam, versit Abu Rumi Habesinus; editit Th. Pell Platt, London, 1824.

<sup>5</sup> *Testamentum Novum Domini Nostri* . . . ed. Th. P. Platt, London, 1829.



complete Bible in 1840.<sup>1</sup> Thus a printed edition of the whole Bible existed in Amharic some eighty-five years before the same could be said for Go'az. Moreover, an improved reprinting was carried out by L. Krapf and published in three volumes in 1871-3.<sup>2</sup> It is this edition which was used by F. Praetorius for his *Amharische Sprache* (p. 11), a work 'of which Semitic linguistics can be proud'.<sup>3</sup> Every edition of the Amharic Bible issued by the B. & F.B.S. has been based on Abu Rumi's version, and it was not until the appearance of the Emperor Bible (see presently) in 1960/1 that a new translation formed the basis of the publication of an Amharic Bible.

The Ethiopian, whose translation thus acquired a long and memorable life, possessed a 'perfectly Abyssinian countenance' (Jowett, p. 201). Abu Rumi was born in about 1750.<sup>4</sup> He left his country when he was about twenty-eight, visited Cairo and Jerusalem, traded in Syria, and went to India by way of Armenia and Persia. In India he resided in Sir William Jones's house and was said, by Asselin (p. 201), to have been Sir William's instructor. We are not told what he is supposed to have taught that great orientalist, but presumably it was a smattering of Go'az and Amharic poetry. After a brief return to Ethiopia he went once more to Cairo where he was discovered, desperately ill, by M. Asselin. The Amharic translation of the Bible occupied him for ten years. Upon completion of this monumental labour he visited Jerusalem and died, shortly after his return to Cairo, of the plague—in about 1819. Abu Rumi did for Amharic and Bible studies what his compatriot Abba Gregory had done for the great Ludolf a century and a half earlier.

Abu Rumi's version, with some changes and amendments, held sway until the Emperor Haile Sellassie I ordered a new translation of the entire Bible which appeared in 1960/1. The emperor's preface to this work is dated 1955 and coincides with the silver jubilee of his accession to the throne. He describes the genesis and background of this work in terms which command attention

<sup>1</sup> *Biblia sacra amharica*, sub auspicio D. Asselini . . . ed. T. P. Platt, London, 1840.

<sup>2</sup> The New Testament was reprinted in 1870, but the changes are confined to the Old Testament: *The Books of the Old Testament*, translated into the Amharic Language by Abba Rumi, an Abyssinian Learned. For the first time corrected and edited in England by the Revd. Thomas Platt. Now improved after the Hebrew Original by the Revd. Dr. Krapf in Germany. Printed at the expense and by the request of the B. & F.B.S. in London at the Mission Press of St. Christophers, near Basle, Switzerland, 1871-3. 3 vols.

<sup>3</sup> So H. J. Pokotny in his article 'Semnuc' in *The World History of the Jewish People*, I, 107. Pokotny also refers *ibidem* to the Semitic languages of Ethiopia as an 'inexhaustible and exceptionally fascinating' field.

<sup>4</sup> Jowett reports (p. 201) that he was 'about 20 when he interpreted for Mr. Bruce at Gondar'.

and interest:<sup>1</sup> he first refers to the Go'az translation which was made 'at the time when Ethiopia received the Pentateuch in O.T. times and the Gospels in N.T. times'. Ethiopia thus possesses 'priority over most countries—as is attested by history—in accepting first the Old Testament and subsequently the New'. H.I.M. thus appears to adhere to the traditional notion (see p. 31, above) of the Old Testament having been introduced into Ethiopia first and that translation into Go'az took place simultaneously with the acceptance, respectively, of the Old Testament and the New Testament.

However, in the course of time Amharic came to replace Go'az, and knowledge of the classical tongue became increasingly confined to clerics, while ordinary people could no longer understand it. This state of affairs induced the emperor, so he explains, to commission—even while still regent and heir to the throne—a translation of the Holy Scriptures into Amharic to be carried out by scholars selected by him. He also imported, out of his own purse, printing presses from Europe and set up a printing establishment at Addis Ababa. When the task of translating had been accomplished and the new version was in the press, the Italo-Abyssinian war broke out and the work was held up indefinitely. After the liberation of Ethiopia the emperor set up a committee of experts to correct the Amharic version of the Scriptures and to collate it with the Hebrew and the Greek texts, respectively. This undertaking was carried out 'with care and accuracy', and the results were presented to H.I.M. in 1951/2.

I have not made a systematic comparative study of the 'Abu Rumi' and 'Emperor' translations, but from desultory reading of both versions the following picture seems to emerge: I can find no evidence that the new recension has been subjected to any perceptible collation with the Hebrew and Greek originals. The Amharic has certainly been modernized and 'up-dated'; the order of words, in particular, has been brought into conformity with contemporary stylistic tastes in Amharic. The use of Abu Rumi's text can be clearly discerned, even where the changes that have been introduced are by no means negligible.

The first known translation of any part of the Bible into Tigrinya<sup>2</sup> is the rendering of St. John's Gospel commissioned, in

<sup>1</sup> The full Amharic text of the Imperial preface appears in photographic reproduction on p. 68.

<sup>2</sup> For the failure to distinguish between Tigrinya and Tigro see Praetorius, *Tigrahaphische*, pp. 8-9; Ullendorff, *Semitic Languages of Ethiopia*, pp. 18-23, 227.



## መቅደም ።

ሞ፡ አንበሳ ፡ ዘእምነገደ ፡ ይሁዳ ።

ቀዳማዊ ፡ ኃይለ ፡ ሥላሴ ፡

ሥዩመ ፡ አግዚአብሔር ፡ ንጉሠ ፡ ነገሥት ፡ ዘኢትዮጵያ ፡

የክርስቲያን ፡ ደላት ፡ የገጣች ፡ ኢትዮጵያ ፡ አስተዳደር ፡ ዘኢትዮጵያ ፡ ቀዳማዊ ፡ አግዚአብሔር ፡ ይሁዳ ፡ ሥላሴ ፡ ሥዩመ ፡ አግዚአብሔር ፡ ንጉሠ ፡ ነገሥት ፡ ዘኢትዮጵያ ፡

በፊት ገጽ ፡ ዘመድ ፡ ግዕዝ ፡ ያረፈ ፡ ቅጽ ፡ ይላ ፡ ላይ ፡ አስተዳደር ፡ ዘኢትዮጵያ ፡ ቀዳማዊ ፡ አግዚአብሔር ፡ ይሁዳ ፡ ሥላሴ ፡ ሥዩመ ፡ አግዚአብሔር ፡ ንጉሠ ፡ ነገሥት ፡ ዘኢትዮጵያ ፡

ደመርን ፡ በዚያን ፡ ጊዜ ፡ በግዕዝ ፡ በአግዚአብሔር ፡ ንጉሠ ፡ ነገሥት ፡ ዘኢትዮጵያ ፡ ቀዳማዊ ፡ አግዚአብሔር ፡ ይሁዳ ፡ ሥላሴ ፡ ሥዩመ ፡ አግዚአብሔር ፡ ንጉሠ ፡ ነገሥት ፡ ዘኢትዮጵያ ፡

the 1830s, by Samuel Gobat.<sup>1</sup> It was written on paper, consists of 140 pages, and was given by E. Rüppell to the Frankfurt municipal library.<sup>2</sup> There are two Tña versions of the four Gospels (also made in the 1830s), both allegedly translated by Dābtāra Matewos of Adwa, though Praetorius (*Tigrīnasprache*, p. 10) has shown that they are marked by profound differences as 'zwei von einander ganz unabhängige Versionen'. The first manuscript was owned by E. Rödiger,<sup>3</sup> and the first chapter of St. John according to this version was printed in Praetorius' *Tigrīnasprache*. The other manuscript (ወንጌል ፡ ቅዱስ ፡ ናይ ፡ ጉደጋና ፡ ናይ ፡ መድኃኒት ፡ ናይ ፡ ሰብ ፡ ክርስቲስ ፡ ብገገግግግ) is in the Berlin library<sup>4</sup> and contains the following note on the title-page: 'Die 4 Evangelien ins Tigrische übersetzt durch Deberta Mateos, revidirt durch C. W. Isenberg, Missionar in Adoa in Abessinien, in den Jahren 1836 u. 1837. Der Königl. Bibliothek in Berlin ehrfurchtsvoll geschenkt. C. W. I.' It is this version which underlies the Krapf edition of the Gospels of 1866.<sup>5</sup> And it is also this text which exists in manuscript in the B. & F.B.S. as part of the entire New Testament, Genesis, and Psalms.

The Frankfurt and Rödiger manuscripts, though independent of each other, have both been translated from a Go'az original. Praetorius (*Tñaspr.*, p. 11) had no hesitation in arriving at this conclusion. The Berlin manuscript has been written in a European hand (Praetorius, op. cit., p. 10)—probably Isenberg's—though Dillmann, in his Berlin catalogue entry, does not refer to this fact but notes that the text is arranged in the European manner, without division into columns. Praetorius (p. 11) has also shown that 'der Version Berlin und Chrschona irgend ein europäisches Original zu Grunde lag'. Such European models were henceforth increasingly used and must be reckoned with in Amharic, Tigrīna, and Tigre translations of the Bible.

Praetorius has established that the Frankfurt and Rödiger manuscripts are to such an extent under the influence of Ethiopic that they contain much that is quite alien to Tigrīna proper. Not only do we encounter entire phrases in Go'az as well as

<sup>1</sup> 1799-1879, later Bishop of Jerusalem.  
<sup>2</sup> Rüppell, *Reise in Abyssinien*, II. 408, erroneously thought that this was St. Luke's Gospel. It was, incidentally, the only composition in Tña seen by Rüppell. Cf. also L. Gaudichaud, *Abess. Handbuch*, . . . 28 Frankfurt, p. 10; Praetorius copied this manuscript when he worked on his *Tigrīnasprache* (p. 10).

<sup>3</sup> 1801-74, a pupil of Gesenius. Cf. also my *Amharic Christology*, p. 3, note 4.  
<sup>4</sup> See Dillmann's *Verzeichnis*, pp. 14-15 (MS. no. fol. 445).  
<sup>5</sup> *Evangelia sacra . . . in lingua tigrinae versu Deberta Mateos Habesnuu*, Adowa, Tigrinae scripturae, nunc primum in lucem edita per J. L. Krapf . . . Bambarae . . . in officina typographica Chrschomae, MDCCCXVI.



chapter and section headings, but proper names appear in archaic forms, and pronominal suffixes and auxiliary verbs are used in an Ethiopic rather than a Tña manner. In contrast, the Berlin and Chrischona texts reflect the language spoken in the region of Adwa<sup>1</sup> and appear to be a great deal more idiomatic.

I have not mentioned an earlier 'translation' of St. Mark and St. John into Tña undertaken by Nathaniel Pearce<sup>2</sup> who had accompanied Henry Salt and lived in Ethiopia from 1805 to 1819. His rendering was written 'in English characters' and conforms with the notions of traditional English spelling.<sup>3</sup> It is a most singular composition written in an idiom of which Praetorius charitably said (*Tñasprache*, p. 12): 'vielleicht wird man denselben gar nicht mehr zum Tña rechnen dürfen'. The *spiritus movens* behind Mr. Pearce's Tña (and also Amharic) attempts was William Jowett who met Pearce while at Cairo in 1819 (*Christian Researches*, pp. 204-13):

... as it appeared desirable to have the greatest variety possible of specimens of Abyssinian Languages, it was resolved to employ Mr. Pearce in attempting both dialects, those, namely, of Amhara and Tigre. The Gospel of St. Mark was, in consequence, translated by him, from the English Version, into these two dialects; and subsequently he added that of St. John, in Tigre.<sup>4</sup> These three Versions are now in the possession of the British & Foreign Bible Society.

Jowett, despite his admiration for Pearce's talents, concedes that, since Abu Rumi's Amharic rendering has become available, Pearce's Gospel of St. Mark in Amharic 'may be considered as entirely superseded. It cannot even serve as a criterion by which to correct anything that may appear to us faulty in the Version of Abu Rumi; this latter having paramount claims to be esteemed as a Standard Version' (pp. 205/206). Jowett also maintains that 'had he [Pearce] possessed the advantages of a Classical Education, he would have combined many of the chief qualifications requisite in a Translator'.

One brief specimen of Pearce's Tña translation (*St. Mark*, 4: 8):

<sup>1</sup> There is no Adwa dialect in the narrow sense, and the language spoken there has wide currency over the entire Tña area. Cf. on this point my *Semitic Languages of Ethiopia*, *passim*.  
<sup>2</sup> Cf. *The Life and Adventures of Nathaniel Pearce*, written by himself London, 1831. See also *Beem*, 46 and 233 in *Fumagalli*; H. Salt, *Voyage to Abyssinia*, *passim*. Wright, *B.A.A. Catalogue*, cccv; and *Sem. Langs. of Ethiopia*, p. 39, note 13.  
<sup>3</sup> For a specimen of Pearce's Tña 'orthography' see Wright, *loc. cit.*, who calls Pearce 'an illiterate man, who had not studied the native languages scientifically'.  
<sup>4</sup> I.e. Tña.

Wer! calle woddock ov subbuck muddre, wer gebber  
 ወሃልላ ወረቕ ኦብ ዳቡቕ ፖረፈ ወገሪ

fruhe ter lar! wer ter chummerhu; wer wolledhu

ፍራ እተሳለ ወተጨመረ ወወለደ

eddetā serlasser eddetā sidser wer eddetā merete.

ሓይታ ወገሳ ሓይታ ስድሳ ወሓይታ ፖለተ

This is, I think, about the most successful passage in Pearce's rendering;<sup>5</sup> I hope that my interlinear transcription into Tña corresponds to Pearce's intentions.

To revert to the mainstream of Tña Bible translations: the 1866 Krapf edition of the Gospels was not followed by a rendering of the entire New Testament until 1909 when Dr. C. Winquist of the Swedish Evangelical Mission and Alāk'a Tawāldā Mādhon of Aksum<sup>6</sup> collaborated on such a version.<sup>7</sup> The entire Tña Bible was published as recently as 1956: the Old Testament was printed by Petros Silla at Asmara and the New Testament by the Eritrean Government Press; both together were then printed by offset process in Great Britain.

The first instalment of the Scriptures in Tigre was printed in 1889 at the Swedish Mission Press at Monkullo,<sup>8</sup> some ten miles from Massawa. It was the Gospel of St. Mark and had been translated into Tigre by Tawāldā Mādhon and Dawit Emanuel, under the supervision of Dr. C. Winquist. In 1902 the entire New Testament in Tigre was printed at the Swedish Mission Press at Asmara. It was the work of the same two indigent scholars, now working under the guidance of K. G. Roden.<sup>9</sup> In this first edition of 1902 it is stated that it was translated 'dal Greco, basandosi specialmente sull'ultima versione Inglese ed anche Etiopica'. From perusal of this work it becomes quite clear that the English and Gə'əz versions were principally used for the Tigre translation. A second and improved edition (ዓለላ: ሓጽፖ: ለፋፖ:) was produced at Asmara in 1931 and was followed by some fifty pages of ጥዕክ: ስሕፋስ: ገለፍ:

<sup>5</sup> On the occurrence, in Pearce's rendering, of the conjunction *we* Praetorius (*Tñaspr.*, p. 12) had already remarked with astonishment.  
<sup>6</sup> Cf. Jowett, p. 207.  
<sup>7</sup> See J. Kolmodin, *AIO* 1910/15, p. 236.

<sup>8</sup> A second and improved edition was printed by the Swedish Evangelical Mission at Asmara in 1939.  
<sup>9</sup> *Evangelium enligt Markus på Tigra-Språket*, tryckt på Missionspressen i Monkullo, 1889, in 16°, 32 pp.

<sup>10</sup> The Swedish Missionary to whom we are indebted for the Tigre text and Italian translation of the history, law, and customs of the Mena tribes (Asmara, 1913).



Two parts—and hitherto the only ones—of the Old Testament in Tigre, Psalms and Isaiah, were printed at the Swedish Mission Press at Asmara in 1925. In both, the Revd. G. R. Sundström<sup>1</sup> is stated to be the translator; the names of his indigenous assistants are not indicated.

The Gafat version of *Song of Songs* (Dillmann, *Bodleian Catalogue* XXIII = MS. Bruce 94) is more in the nature of a linguistic curiosity. Cf. W. Leslau, *Gafat Documents*, New Haven, 1945.

<sup>1</sup> 1869-1919. The 1925 Tigre edition of *Paulus and Isaias* is posthumous. Cf. Littmann's obituary in *Der Neue Orient*, 1920 (reprinted in *Ein Jahrhundert Orientalistik*, Wiesbaden, 1953, pp. 56-60). Sundström was also the author of a Tigre grammar, the manuscript of which I inspected at Assiut in the early 1940s but which has still not been published. According to Littmann (loc. cit.), Sundström also left Tigre translations of Genesis and Exodus; these may conceivably be incorporated in the planned Tigre edition of the Bible.

## II

## THE IMPACT OF THE OLD TESTAMENT

## Introductory

*Introductory*

In the historical section of the Introduction we have seen how early Jewish influences, deep-rooted Old Testament practices, and a widespread *imitatio Veteris Testamenti* have combined to bring about the syncretistic nature of Ethiopian civilization. In the following it will be our task to examine certain selected facets of this civilization and to identify those which can be traced back to the world of the Old Testament.<sup>1</sup>

The present chapter is, therefore, devoted to a study of the impact of Hebraic and Old Testament elements on the peculiar form of indigenous Abyssinian Christianity. It does not aim at exhaustiveness, and the following notes are more in the nature of prolegomena to a fuller examination that ought to be undertaken in the future.<sup>2</sup> The present writer cannot claim expert knowledge in each of the dozen or so subjects to be touched upon in the ensuing investigation. It is hoped that specialists in the various fields will subject my summary observations to critical scrutiny and expand them in both extent and depth.

No doubt some of the connections to be studied here may, in some instances, turn out to be either fortuitous or to be part of the general Semitic heritage. In other cases, the parallels may seem too tenuous or, perhaps, capable of a different interpretation, but these hesitations scarcely detract from the need and value of such a pilot study. Travellers from the earliest times to the present day<sup>1</sup> have detected in Ethiopia and her people the

<sup>2</sup> Rathjens, *Juden in Abessinien*, pp. 40 ff., has discussed the view (expressed by Kroeber, *Glaubenslehre und Geschichte der älteren abessinischen Kirche*, and some others) that the alleged Jewish influences in Ethiopia are, in fact, simply the common heritage of the old Kufra or Jewish Church. He goes on to show that 'die antikesamenitischen Relikte in dem Kultus der abessinischen Kirche nicht nur Erscheinungen sind, die in der altchristlichen Kirche überall anwesend waren, sondern daß es auch um Bewußtsein des übernommenen Erbes'.

\* Such a study has also been demanded by M. Rodinson (in the profound learning and gratifying see above, p. 15, note 1, where I have paid tribute to him) as outlined in JSS 1936. The present urgency of M. Rodinson's criticisms of my position is as outlined in my 1936 article. The present work will take up, in a revised and expanded form, the points made in my 1936 article. It will also take account of M. Rodinson's observations without necessarily entering into a detailed argument and debate at every juncture.

<sup>4</sup> In an article in *Examiner*, Feb. 1964, M. J. Lasky reports a conversation with a Jew living in Adida Ababa who told him *inter alia*: "When I first came here—from Eastern Europe



authentic flavour of the Old Testament and thus—according to their view or bias—have praised or condemned them for it: 'In generale, chi esamina le credenze e le pratiche della chiesa abissina vi rivela maggiori punti di contatto col giudaismo. . . .'<sup>1</sup>

### The Kebra Nagast

The *chef-d'œuvre* of Ethiopic literature is the *Kebra Nagast* ('Glory of the Kings') which has as its centre-piece the legend of the Queen of Sheba (based on the narrative in 1 Kings 10: 1-13 and liberally amplified and embellished), how she visited Solomon, accepted his religion, bore him a son (Menelik I), and how the son visited his father and abducted the Ark of the Covenant which was taken to Aksum, the new Zion. Chapter III will be devoted in its entirety to a study of this famous cycle of legends. In the present context we shall refer only to such aspects of the *Kebra Nagast* as can be discussed independently of the Sheba story.

Among the Magdala manuscripts in the British Museum were two copies of the *Kebra Nagast*, Oriental 818 and 819 (= Wright, *Catalogue*, cccxci), but Orient. 819,<sup>2</sup> written in the reign of Iyasu I (1682-1706), was returned to Ethiopia in circumstances which throw a dramatic light on the paramount importance of this work. The Emperor Yohannes of Ethiopia wrote to Earl Granville, the British Foreign Secretary, and requested the return of the *Kebra Nagast* which had been taken to England by the Napier expedition in 1868. According to Budge (*Queen of Sheba*, pp. xxxiv-xxxv),<sup>3</sup> the emperor's letter includes the following passage:<sup>4</sup>

—I was simply overwhelmed at how 'Jewish' everything was. Have you been to one of the traditional religious services—what does it remind you of if not a Sabbath morning in an orthodox *shul*? I found among the various Ethiopian amulets things very close to my own phylacteries and *mezuzot*. I was exhilarated to discover the high holy days also falling in September, the Sabbath being celebrated on Saturday, and time reckoned from sunset . . .<sup>5</sup> (p. 24).

<sup>1</sup> Conci Rosacci, *L'Abissinia*, p. 83.

<sup>2</sup> A short description of this manuscript was published in *EDMG* xiv 514-15. See also Wright, *Catalogue*, p. 297, footnote.

<sup>3</sup> See also Budge's *Amulets and Talismans*, pp. 197-9.

<sup>4</sup> In fact, the Emperor Yohannes wrote two letters on the same day (8 Nohase 1864 = 14 [not 10 as Budge states] August 1874), one addressed to Queen Victoria and the other to Lord Granville. While some passages are virtually identical, there are nevertheless large parts of these letters which differ from each other considerably. The scribe who penned these two missives was remarkably careless leaving out letters and even numerals in the date. The language represents an interesting specimen of nineteenth-century Amharic with peculiarities that might well reflect the habits of the native speaker of Tiginya. I hope to publish the originals of these two letters on an early occasion. They have never been accurately translated.

<sup>5</sup> Since Budge published the following extract on several occasions and as many scholars copied it in good faith, I ought to mention that I have long had some doubt about the authenticity

Again there is a book called *Kebra Nagast* which contains the Law of the whole of Ethiopia; and the names of the chiefs, churches, and provinces are in this book. I pray you will find out who has got this book and send it to me, for in my country my people will not obey my orders without it.

The trustees of the British Museum complied with the emperor's request, and the manuscript was 'returned to the King of Ethiopia by order of the Trustees on Dec. 14th, 1872'.

Bezold<sup>6</sup> had already drawn attention, in 1905, to the need for a thorough examination of the literary sources of the *Kebra Nagast*, but fifty years were to elapse before this task was successfully accomplished in a mature and competent doctoral thesis by D. A. Hubbard.<sup>7</sup> Apart from numerous quotations and paraphrases from the Old and New Testaments, we find generous borrowings from apocryphal literature, the book of Enoch (of which, even after the discovery of Aramaic Dead Sea fragments, the Ethiopic version still offers the only complete text), the legend of the Pearl,<sup>8</sup> from the christological and patristic writings in Coptic, Syriac, Arabic, and Greek, from the *Testamentum Adami*,<sup>9</sup> from Jewish-Rabbinical literature as well as from parallels to material incorporated in the Qur'an.

When the *Kebra Nagast* was committed to writing, early in the fourteenth century, its purpose no doubt was to lend support to the claims and aspirations of the recently established Solomonide dynasty. Its author, the *mburā 'ad Yeshaq* of Aksum, was thus mainly redactor and interpreter of material which had long been known but had not until then found a co-ordinating hand, an expository mind, and a great national need. The *Kebra Nagast* is not merely a literary work, but—as the Old Testament to the Hebrews or the Qur'an to the Arabs—it is the repository of Ethiopian national and religious feelings.

In the present context, however, we are only concerned with

of the final clause ('for in my country my people will not obey my orders without it'). Study of the final clause has now shown that there is no Amharic phrase in those letters of the original Amharic text which would correspond to that 'translation'. The Public Record Office reference is F.O. 95/791, and I should like to acknowledge, gratefully, the courtesy of the P.R.O. officials.

<sup>6</sup> *Kebra Nagast*, p. xxxviii.

<sup>7</sup> St. Andrews University, 1936. Dr. Hubbard, who is now President of Fuller Theological Seminary in California, has unhappily still not prepared this work for publication. In a recent letter (Jan. 1967) he informs me, however, that he now expects to return to this task at an early date. Meanwhile, his thesis can be consulted in the University Library at St. Andrews.

<sup>8</sup> Cf. the popular story of the Pearl in chapter 68 of the *Kebra Nagast* as well as the *Life of Hanna*, ed. Sir E. A. W. Budge, pp. 86 ff. (= pp. 164 ff. of the translation). See also the references to the pearl in the Syriac *Hymn of the Dowry*, ed. A. A. Bevan, p. 12. Cf. Bezold, *Kebra Nagast*, pp. xl-xli; Hubbard, *op. cit.*, pp. 267 ff.; and especially Cerulli, *Let.*, pp. 50-51.

<sup>9</sup> Cf. C. Bezold, 'Das arabisch-äthiopische Testamentum Adami', *Asiatische Forschungen* (1906).



such of its elements as are traceable to Old Testament sources, forms, style, and genre. As the carriers of those influences we have to envisage both the Jews of South Arabia,<sup>1</sup> who are the obvious link between Old Testament and Rabbinic writings and their reflections in Qur'an and *Kebra Nagast*, and the profound tendency towards imitating Israel and the Old Testament—a trend which is strong among Ethiopians but is by no means confined to them. M. Rodinson has invited attention to

la conception de l'Église . . . comme successeur authentique d'Israël, comme *Vetus Israel*, l'idée moins fréquente que les pratiques vétéro-testamentaires conservent leur validité pour les Chrétiens, l'idée enfin d'une connexion historique entre une communauté chrétienne donnée et Israël.<sup>2</sup>

A glance at the list of passages<sup>3</sup> from the Old and New Testaments quoted in the *Kebra Nagast* shows the vast preponderance of Old Testament references, and this indicates accurately the sediment of Hebraic lore which underlies this great storehouse of traditions and legends. It is, however, not only the contents with their Biblical and Rabbinical allusions, but especially the Midrashic form of narrative which is strongly reminiscent of Jewish literature. In chapter 13 of the *Kebra Nagast*, for instance, we encounter the story of Abraham selling his father's idols, making fun of them, and finally destroying them. This is clearly borrowed from the identical Midrash<sup>4</sup> and, as the Qur'an<sup>5</sup> shows, was probably a legend frequently told by the Jews of Arabia. Chapter 100, about the angels who rebelled, is no doubt connected with the concluding part of section 11 of *Midrash Deuteronomy Rabba*.<sup>6</sup> In addition to some direct borrowings and a greater number of indirect ones, we may thus detect in the *Kebra Nagast* the reflections of Hebraic motifs, style, genre, and above all of that elusive, yet very real, thing: literary atmosphere.

Hubbard (op. cit., pp. 14 ff.) has called the Old Testament the primary source of the *Kebra Nagast*, not only on account of the sheer bulk of the Old Testament material incorporated in it but also because of the strategic place it occupies in the struc-

<sup>1</sup> "Des traditions juives ont donc pu traverser la Mer Rouge avec les marchands et les autres égarés par la Judée . . . la fidélité aux coutumes judaïques et judéo-chrétiennes a duré jusqu'aux temps modernes . . ." (J. Derenbourg, *Revue de l'Histoire des Religions*, xxi, 1891, 359-60).

<sup>2</sup> JSS 1964, pp. 17-18; *Id. Or.*, 1964, p. 240.

<sup>3</sup> Burge, *Queen of Sheba*, pp. 240-3; Hubbard, op. cit., pp. 447 ff.

<sup>4</sup> *Midrash Haggadol on Genesis*, ed. Schochter, Cambridge, 1902, col. 189.

<sup>5</sup> *Surah*, xiv. 48 ff.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. also Ginsberg, *Legends of the Jews*, v. 103 ff.

ture of the work: the Sheba cycle, the *tabot* cycle, the voluminous concatenations of prophecies beginning with chapter 102, the numerous typological interpretations—are all rooted in the Old Testament. These materials can be divided into quotations and references; the former reflect fairly accurately the text of the Ethiopic Old Testament, while the latter merely refer, with varying degrees of accuracy, to subjects treated in the Old Testament. There is no point in going once more over the ground which has been covered so competently by Hubbard whose study should soon appear in print.

A point of particular interest in the present context is the identity of the version from which the *Kebra Nagast* derives its quotations. A systematic study of this aspect might well be helpful for an elucidation of the problems discussed in the previous chapter, i.e. the translation of the Bible into Ethiopic, the *Vorlage* used, and the possible survival, in works like the *Kebra Nagast*, of pre-revision materials. Hubbard found that 'for all practical purposes' it may be said that the *Kebra Nagast* is not acquainted with any text of the Old Testament apart from that represented in da Bassano's Asmara Ethiopic Old Testament (p. 52). This verdict would corroborate da Bassano's claim of having made use of the oldest and best manuscripts available in Ethiopia (see above, pp. 59-60). The large number of quotations, especially from the Psalms, which agree verbatim (or virtually verbatim) with the da Bassano text, would appear to suggest some widely accepted text-model from a fairly early period. This question will, however, require more detailed study. The tendency of the *Kebra Nagast* to amplify, condense, or paraphrase makes it difficult—as Hubbard has pointed out—to subject to critical scrutiny the Old Testament text used by the *Kebra Nagast*.

Hubbard has rightly said (op. cit., pp. 53 ff.) that the Old Testament quotations in the *Kebra Nagast* fulfil two principal tasks: to serve as proof-texts and to play a didactic role. The former occur predominantly in chapters 102-11 where the Messianic office of Jesus is 'proved' from Old Testament prophecies. The latter can be observed particularly in chapters 40-42 where Zadok teaches Menelik the essentials of the law which is to be enforced in the kingdom of Ethiopia. Both show the high regard and the crucial importance which the Ethiopian Church attaches to the Old Testament.

The manner in which the *Kebra Nagast* uses Old Testament quotations is apt to be rather cavalier at times: passages may be



altered to make them more suitable as proof-texts, and the context may be ignored for the sake of some superficial verbal resemblance. Hubbard finds that 'for the *Kebra Nagast*, as for the Alexandrian Fathers, the rabbinic tradition, and general Oriental practice, the text has tremendous elasticity. The meaning of a passage may be stretched to fit any subject the wording will bear' (op. cit., p. 55).

References to Old Testament material are, of course, even more numerous and pervasive than direct quotations. They are often woven into the fabric of the *Kebra Nagast* and appear as allusions to narratives, legal material, genealogies, and allegories. A good example of this type of reference is the story of Judah and Tamar (Gen. 38); this is embodied in the *Kebra Nagast*, chapter 77, which deals with the descent from Shem of the king of Persia. The connexion is established by the Septuagint transcription of Perez as *Fares* which leads to the rather far-fetched linking of Persia (*Fars*) with Perez (*Fares*). The Ethiopic Old Testament frequently follows the LXX forms of proper names. At times the *Kebra Nagast* conflates elements from disparate Old Testament stories: thus Lot's drunkenness (Gen. 19) is put together with Noah's (Gen. 9) to form one version in chapters 78-79. For further details see Hubbard, op. cit., pp. 61 ff.

It must not, of course, be thought that there are no New Testament quotations and references in the *Kebra Nagast*. There are, in fact, very many, but they are outnumbered by the Old Testament at a ratio of about 5:1 (according to Hubbard, op. cit., p. 111). The reasons for this Old Testament preponderance are not far to seek: the Queen of Sheba cycle, the central narrative of the *Kebra Nagast*, is derived from the Old Testament, at least in its basic features. The Old Testament is the ambience of the Solomonic legend and dynasty, of the Ark of the Covenant, and of most of the framework within which its characters move. Also, while the *Kebra Nagast* uses its New Testament material in an orthodox way in conformity with the accepted contextual interpretation, it allows much greater freedom in its treatment of the Old Testament; hence the Old Testament offers far more scope and literary usefulness and latitude for the compilers of the *Kebra Nagast*. Moreover, Hubbard avers that the Semitic affinities of the Ethiopian Church predispose it somewhat towards the Old Testament and its *Weltanschauung*:

There can be little doubt that the Ethiopians were acquainted with substantial portions of the O.T. before they knew anything about the N.T. This early deposit of O.T. material on Ethiopian soil is reflected

in the vast preponderance of O.T. quotations and references, especially in the collections of O.T. commandments (op. cit., p. 112).

### Magic

One of the most notable features in Abyssinian Christianity is the survival of magical practices and prayers as well as a whole body of superstitious beliefs.<sup>1</sup> Many of these magical prayers combine their pagan substratum with a hastily and belatedly superimposed layer of divine invocations or references to the Virgin Mary and the Saints. It is likely that the majority of superstitious and magical practices are derived from the old Cushitic pagan beliefs, but there are indications also of a different kind. Demonology and magic were widespread in the ancient East (and elsewhere), and in most cases it is quite impossible to determine any precise national origin. A very large body of magical craft, contrivances, and prayers was common to most peoples of the ancient Semitic world. Even so, a few hints may here be thrown out where it seems possible to detect some specifically Hebraic and Old Testament elements.<sup>2</sup> How serious a danger sorcery, witchcraft, and magic constituted in the religion of the Hebrews may be gathered from Leviticus 20: 6. There is little doubt that many magical practices formed so integral a part of the pagan folklore of Canaan that they were taken over into the Hebrew religion and given a fresh and sublimated significance.<sup>3</sup> One need, in this connection, think only of the *Urim* and *Thummim*,<sup>4</sup> phylactery,<sup>5</sup> and *mazuzot*.<sup>6</sup> The last two, being the literal interpretation of the command in Deuteronomy 6: 8-9, were originally no doubt meant to avert demons and other evil spirits and may be compared to the amulets worn by Ethiopians for the same purpose.

Amulets and *tefillin*, shield of David, and seal and net of Solomon are accompanied, among both Hebrews and Ethiopians, by spells to scatter demons (שְׁדִים-וְרוּחַם) and to avert disease. The

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Strelny's important *Préface magiques éthiopiennes* and the literature cited there; also his 'Quelques éléments du vocabulaire magique éthiopien' in *GLECS* v, 41-45; Budge, *Amulets and Talismans*; W. H. Worrell, 'Studien zum abess. Zauberkult', *ZA* 1910; D. Lifchitz, *Textes éthiopiens magiques-réligieux*, *Hi Or*, 1964, p. 240. The literature referred to by M. Rodinson in *Hi Or*, 1964, p. 240, is unrivalled, thinks that even these clearly expressed reservations do not take sufficient account of the fact that 'il s'agit d'un fond commun, d'usages répandus dans tout le monde hellénistique oriental...'

(*Hi Or*, 1964, p. 240).

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Benasinger, *Hebräische Archäologie*, pp. 180-9.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Benasinger, op. cit., pp. 344-5; de Vaux, *Ancient Israel*, p. 352.

<sup>4</sup> Benasinger, op. cit., p. 327; Lifchitz, op. cit., pp. 2-3.

<sup>5</sup> Benasinger, op. cit., p. 303. Cf. also *Isa* 57 B.







followed by Moses (cf. the miracles related in the Pentateuch) and by Solomon. Budge has remarked that according to Ethiopian tradition

the Abyssinians abandoned their pagan cults and all their various magical practices at the command of the Queen of Sheba who, under the influence of Solomon's teaching, had embraced Judaism, but this . . . only means that they exchanged native for Judaic systems of magic. Solomon's power of working magic was, they thought, greater than that of any Abyssinian magician, and with the acceptance of Solomon's God, they adopted much that appertained to Hebrew magic and sorcery.<sup>1</sup>

Apart from magical names, there exist large numbers of words which are supposed to possess magical properties. They are either nonsense-creations or imaginary foreign words, especially *K'alat abrayst* or *K'alat arabi*.<sup>2</sup>

Of a very different kind is the technical vocabulary of Ethiopian magic. This, too, has been investigated by Strelcyn in a fine article<sup>3</sup> from which most of the following examples have been drawn:

*dgm* (Go'az and Amharic) 'to repeat, to whisper incantations'—*lhl* (Hebr. and Aram.) 'to whisper incantations';  
*rgm* (Go'az) 'to curse'—*rgm* (Hebr.) 'to stone, to imprecate';  
*hym* (Go'az, Hebr., Aram., Mand. *hym*) 'to anathematize';  
*'sr* (Go'az, Aram., Mand.) 'to bind by spells and charms';  
*hym* (Go'az)—*hym* (Aram.) 'to seal' (in the magical sense); cf. also Mand. *halanta* 'seal';  
*fiḥ* (*ph*) 'to untie, to absolve'.

#### The Ark of the Covenant

The Ark of the Covenant (Go'az *tabot*) which, the *Kebra Nagast* alleges,<sup>4</sup> was stolen from Jerusalem has formed the centre-piece of the Ethiopian Church service since time immemorial. The word *tabot* ('Noah's ark; the Ark of the Covenant; tablets of the Law') is derived, like *ṭābūt*, from Jewish Pal. Aramaic *ṭēbūtā* (*ṭēbūtā*) which in turn is a derivative of Hebrew *ṭēbūt*.<sup>5</sup> The concept and function of the *tabot* represent one of the most remarkable areas of agreement with Old Testament forms of worship.

<sup>1</sup> *History of Ethiopia*, p. 58.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Strelcyn, op. cit., p. xxx.

<sup>3</sup> *GLECS* v. 41-45 (25 Nov. 1949).

<sup>4</sup> Cf. the detailed discussion in Rabin, *Ancient West Arabian*, pp. 109-10; Noldke, *New*

*Budge*, pp. 37, 49; Polotsky, *JSS* 1964, p. 6; Radisson, *GLECS* ix. 84-88 (28 Nov. 1968) which contains a most important discussion of the issues involved as well as a detailed critique of the views expressed by me in *JSS* 1956, pp. 233 ff.

<sup>5</sup> Chapter 48 ff.

Abu Šāliḥ (early thirteenth century) had already observed<sup>1</sup> that

the Abyssinians possess also the Ark of the Covenant, in which are the two tables of stone, inscribed by the finger of God with the commandments which he ordained for the children of Israel. The Ark of the Covenant is placed upon the altar, but is not so wide as the altar; it is as high as the knee of a man, and is overlaid with gold; and upon its upper cover<sup>2</sup> (غطاء النوقان) there are crosses of gold; and there are five precious stones upon it, one at each of the four corners, and one in the middle. The liturgy is celebrated upon the Ark four times in the year, within the palace of the king; and a canopy is spread over it when it is taken out from its own church to the church which is in the palace of the king: namely on the feast of the great Nativity, on the feast of the glorious Baptism, on the feast of the holy Resurrection, and on the feast of the illuminating Cross. And the Ark is attended and carried by a large number of Israelites descended from the family of the prophet David. . . . In every town of Abyssinia there is one church, as spacious as it can possibly be.

This description clearly shows the marked resemblance to the Old Testament Ark of the Covenant;<sup>3</sup> one need only compare such passages as Exodus 25: 10-22; 37: 1-9 or Deuteronomy 10: 8 where the honour of carrying the Ark is entrusted to the Levites. It is called the Ark of the Covenant because it contained the 'tablets of the Covenant' (*luḥot habbrit*).

The theme of the *tabot* is one of great prominence throughout the *Kebra Nagast*.<sup>4</sup> It serves as guarantor of the legitimacy of the Solomonic dynasty whose prestige is safeguarded by the transfer of the Ark from Jerusalem to Aksum. Chapters 103-4 of the *Kebra Nagast* stress the importance of the *tabot* as the focal point of Ethiopian worship<sup>5</sup> and appear to rebut criticisms levelled against the Ethiopians on account of their *tabot*-centred worship. Another important link between the first Zion (Jerusalem) and the second (Aksum) is the party of Israelites who accompanied the Ark and who, like the Levites, had the honour of carrying it (according to Abu Šāliḥ). 'Zion' is, in fact, the usual name given to the Ark by the *Kebra Nagast*:

Whereas in the O.T. Zion, the mount of God's holiness, is His special habitation, in the *Kebra Nagast* the Ark is the place of God's dwelling

<sup>1</sup> *Churches and Monasteries of Egypt*, ff. 105b, 106a. Arabic text on p. 133. See also p. 26, above.

<sup>2</sup> Everett translates this as 'lid'.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. de Vaux, *Ancient Israel*, pp. 297 ff.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Hubbard, op. cit., pp. 325 ff.

<sup>5</sup> Hubbard, op. cit., p. 327.



whether it is located in Jerusalem or Aksum. Hence, to the Ethiopians Zion is not primarily a geographical location but is rather the name of God's dwelling place localized by them in terms of the Ark.<sup>1</sup>

Ludolf (*Historia*, iii. 6, 62), after describing the *mānbār* 'table', continues: 'Huic imponuntur sacra vasa, imprimis אֲרֹן Arca. Tabella sic dicta. Cuius appellationis rationem, cum nusquam reperiam, quia nihil commune cum arca habet; est enim tabula quadrangularis oblonga. . . .'. Ludolf's difficulty in explaining how the tablets of wood or stone can be called *tabot* 'ark' appears to be shared by some scholars to this day. Dillmann (*Lexicon*) and Guidi (*Vocabolario Amarico*) provide two entries under *tabot*: (1) The Ark of Noah and the Ark of the Covenant; (2) 'pietra d'altare; è propriamente una tavoletta di pietra o di legno duro come ebano, che si pone sull'altare . . .'.<sup>2</sup>

I do not think there is any real difficulty here: the genuine Ark is supposed to rest at Aksum; all other churches can only possess replicas. In most cases they were not, however, replicas of the whole ark but merely of its supposed contents, i.e. the tablets of the Law or the Covenant. The description of these stone or wooden tablets as *tabotat* would appear to be by way of a *pars pro toto* referring to the most important part of the Ark, the tables of the Covenant.<sup>3</sup> That the Ark contained these *luhot habbtat* is, of course, expressly stated in Deuteronomy 10: 1-5, 1 Kings 8: 9, Hebrews 9: 4, etc.

It is this identification of the *tabot* with the tables of the Law contained in the Ark that has incurred M. Rodinson's criticism.<sup>4</sup> I have studied M. Rodinson's views with great care, but I cannot see that they differ, in any important and decisive aspect, from the basic proposition which I have advanced. Thus I have no great difficulty in assenting to at least the substance of M. Rodinson's position as summarized in *Bi Or*, 1964, p. 243:

Il paraît donc clair que l'assimilation de la table d'autel chrétienne à l'Arche de l'Ancien Testament, absurde du point de vue de la forme, est une innovation due à un courant idéologique qui cherchait à faire de l'Éthiopie un *zénus Israël*, à la constituer héritière des privilèges du peuple élu, transmission symbolisée par le passage en Éthiopie du paladium central des Hébreux.

<sup>1</sup> Hubbard, *op. cit.*, p. 338.

<sup>2</sup> 'Das Tabot per excellence ist die alttestamentliche Bundeslade, die sich in Aksum befinden soll; darin aber hat jeder Heilige sein eigenes Tabot (in Kasten- oder Plattenform), das als sein Wohnort gedacht wird. . . . In größeren Kirchen pflegt man auch einen Altar aufzustauern und eine wirkliche Lade daraufzustellen. Die gewöhnlichen Tabotat jedoch sind einfache Holzplatten mit eingeschalteten Verzierungen. . . .' (Littmann in German *Aksum Expedition*, iii. 47).

<sup>3</sup> *GLCS* ix. 64-68; *Bi Or*, 1964, p. 243.

I have no doubt that M. Rodinson is right in assigning to the altar table, in Christian worship, the function of the Old Testament Ark, but it seems to me that the *tabot* has an even closer parallel in Old Testament as well as in later Jewish worship: The Hebrew synagogue, as the Tent (Num. 9: 15) and the Temple (1 Kings 6: 19; 8: 1-9) before it, has the Ark (תִּיבָה, תִּיבוֹתָא, אֲרֹן) as its principal item of furniture.<sup>5</sup> Inside the Ark were the tablets of the Covenant in Old Testament times, and in the post-Biblical era it contains the scrolls of the law. 'An ihrem Oberbau sind in der Regel die beiden Gesetzestafeln angebracht. . . .'.<sup>6</sup> It seems to me more than likely that the *tabot* symbolizes the tablets of the Covenant and the scrolls of the law. The manner in which the *tabotat* are carried in procession around the churches<sup>7</sup> is strongly reminiscent of the carrying of the Torah scrolls, especially at *Simhat Tora*.<sup>8</sup>

M. Rodinson's objection that 'les tables de la Loi ne sont pas une décoration obligatoire, ni permanente des armoires synagogales'<sup>9</sup> is, of course, correct (though one would be hard put to find a synagogue without the two ornamental tablets of the Law), but my point is that the *tabot* represents the contents of the Ark, i.e. the tablets of the Covenant in Old Testament times and the scrolls of the Law in the post-Biblical period. The treatment of the *tabot* and its function within the church underline the aptness and cogency of this parallel. 'It is the *tabot* and not the church building which is consecrated by the bishop and gives sanctity to the church in which it is placed.'<sup>10</sup> The same is true of the Tent and the Temple<sup>11</sup> as well as the synagogue in which, for the purposes of public worship, there was only one essential requirement: the *Taba* or *Aron*.<sup>12</sup>

The veneration accorded to the *tabot* in Abyssinia<sup>13</sup> up to the present day, its carriage in solemn procession accompanied by singing, dancing, beating of staffs or praying sticks (ጠጥጥ), rattling of sistra, and sounding of other musical instruments remind one most forcefully of the scene in 2 Samuel 6: 5, 14-16, where David and the people are dancing around the Ark.<sup>14</sup> The entire spectacle, its substance, its atmosphere, and its musical

<sup>5</sup> See I. E. Hogen, *Der jüdische Gottesdienst*, pp. 469 ff.

<sup>6</sup> Elbogen, *op. cit.*, p. 471.

<sup>7</sup> See pl. 32 in Buxton's *Travels in Ethiopia*.

<sup>8</sup> *GLCS* ix. 66.

<sup>9</sup> So already Ludolf (*Commentarius*, p. 381).

<sup>10</sup> Trimmingham, *Islam in Ethiopia*, p. 27; Hyatt, *Church of Abyssinia*, p. 121.

<sup>11</sup> Cf. De Vaux, *Ancient Israel*, pp. 297, 299.

<sup>12</sup> Cf. Elbogen, *op. cit.*, pp. 469 ff.

<sup>13</sup> 'The *Senebet Sancharum* is the receptacle of the ark, an object of the profoundest veneration, and again of evident Jewish origin' (Parkyn, *Life in Abyssinia*, p. 29.).

<sup>14</sup> See also pp. 2-3, above.



instruments, has caused all who have witnessed it to be 'in die Zeiten des Alten Testaments zurückversetzt . . .'.<sup>1</sup>

As had already been shown by Ludolf in the passage quoted above, the *tabot* is placed on the *mānbār* 'seat' or 'throne'. This term is, of course, well known as the *minbar* or *mimbar* of the mosque and is an Ethiopic loanword in Arabic (cf. Nöldeke, *Neue Beiträge*, p. 49). From Arabic it was taken over into the terminology of Jewish worship as *Almemor* which is a corruption of *al-mimbar*. In Biblical times this elevated place was called *migdal* (Neh. 8: 4); in post-Biblical days it is *dukan* or *bimah* (βήμα).<sup>2</sup>

E. Hammerschmidt (*Kultsymbolik*, pp. 216-17) mentions a description of the *tabot* by the late S. Euringer based on information supplied to him by G. Graf. Euringer notes<sup>3</sup> that the *tabot* ('im weiteren Sinne') possesses

die Form eines Kastens mit Fächern, die mittels Flügeltüren verschließbar sind. Das mittlere Querbrett dient als Altartisch, während die zwei unteren Fächer Aufbewahrungsort für liturgische Geräte sind. Auf diesem Altartisch liegt das eigentliche Kleinod, das eigentliche Heiligtum, die Altartafel, der Tabot im vollen und hauptsächlichsten Sinne. . . . Deshalb führt das Gehäuse, der Tabernakel, in dem er thronet, den Namen *manbara tabot*, d. i. 'Thron des Tabot'. Der Thron ist mit Vorhängen, die man je nach den Kirchenzeiten und Teilen der Liturgie auf- und zuziehen kann,<sup>4</sup> wie mit einem Zelte umgeben, was an das Bundeszelt über der Bundeslade mit den Gesetzstafeln in der Wüste Sinai erinnert und erinnern soll. Diese Vorhänge heißen mit einem amharisch konstruierten Ausdruck *jamanbar lebes* [*jāmānbār lebē*], 'Verkleidung des Thrones' (äthiop. *manfala* et).

Hammerschmidt adds that Euringer has established that 'der Tabot im engeren Sinne (also die Tafel) nach Zweck und Form dem abendländischen Altarstein, altare portabile, gleicht'. And, similarly, Rodinson finds that 'le caractère sacré de l'autel fixe latin réside dans sa table de pierre qui le communique à sa base tandis que l'autel mobile (la pierre d'autel) le garde exclusivement. Ce caractère sacré réside essentiellement dans une partie mobile de l'autel est donc général dans le christianisme'.<sup>5</sup>

The fact that this is a widespread phenomenon in Christianity does not, of course, preclude the existence of a very special

<sup>1</sup> Rathjens, *Juden in Abessinien*, p. 48. See also Bent, *Sacred City*, pp. 35-57; and pls. 29, 30, and 32 in Burton's *Travels*.

<sup>2</sup> Elbogen, op. cit., p. 473.

<sup>3</sup> Hammerschmidt derives this from Euringer's unpublished papers (*Kultsymbolik*, p. 216, note 93).

<sup>4</sup> Exactly as is the practice in the synagogue.

<sup>5</sup> *GLECS* ix (1962), p. 67.

relationship between the *tabot* and the Old Testament Ark of the Covenant. It is, in fact, a prominent part of what Rodinson justly calls 'cette tendance à l'imitation de l'Ancien Testament'.<sup>1</sup>

#### Church building

Ethiopia is a country of churches<sup>2</sup> and monasteries. Some of the latter have played a significant part in the cultural, ecclesiastical, and political development of the country. Among the most ancient and famous are Debra Damo<sup>3</sup> and St. Stephen on an island in Lake Hayq, Debra Libanos<sup>4</sup> and Debra Bizen<sup>5</sup> have at times wielded great influence, while some of the churches on the islands in Lake Tana have a beauty and romantic remoteness all their own. The rock-hewn churches of Lalibela<sup>6</sup> have long been acknowledged as celebrated masterpieces of Ethiopian architectural art.

The number of churches is immense, and their size varies from the little round village churches, usually perched upon a hill, to large rectangular and octagonal buildings or modern cathedrals built in most of the major centres of the Ethiopian empire. The rectangular churches are generally older, while the round<sup>7</sup> ones are considerably more numerous. The most famous rectangular sanctuary is that of St. Mary of Zion at Aksum<sup>8</sup> which has been known since the sixth century.

The way in which Ethiopian churches are traditionally constructed appears to be derived from the threefold division of the Hebrew temple. That had already been recognized by Ludolf:

Quippe prisci Christiani, cum primum facultatem nacti sunt aedes ad usum sacrorum publicum aedificandi, Judaeos quam gentiles imitari satius rati, ad exemplum prisci templi Hierosolymitani, vel synagogarum Judaicarum eas construxere. . . .<sup>9</sup>

In his *Commentarius* (pp. 365 ff.) Ludolf speaks in some detail of the construction of Ethiopian churches on the model of the

<sup>1</sup> *Id. Or.*, 1964, p. 249. See also Mercer, *Ethiopia Liturgy*, p. 152, note 15; and especially the excellent photographs in vol. iii of the German *Aksum Expedition*, pl. viii and ix.

<sup>2</sup> 'As for their religion, they are . . . Christian rather in profession than in practice, many of their observances being clearly Jewish. Their very churches . . . remind one of the altars and temples spoken of in the Old Testament, not only from their being mostly built on high places, and surrounded by groves, but also from their internal construction' (Massfield Parry, *Life in Abyssinia*, pp. 289-90).

<sup>3</sup> See B. Fankhurst, *Cultural History*, pl. xxii.

<sup>4</sup> See Ullendorff, *The Ethiopians*, pl. 124.

<sup>5</sup> See the excellent illustrations (but not the text!) in I. Bulcher, *Lalibela*, London, 1959.

<sup>6</sup> See Hammerschmidt, *Symbolik, Tafelband*, p. 69.

<sup>7</sup> See Dornase, *Le pays de la race de Sabao*, p. 17.

<sup>8</sup> Ludolf, *Arcturae*, iii, 6, 19.

<sup>9</sup> See *ibid.*, pl. clv.



Hebrew temple (pp. 366 ff.). Rathjens (op. cit., pp. 48-50) emphasizes that the threefold arrangement of Ethiopian churches, universal and irrespective of size and period, follows the similar division of the Jerusalem Temple. And von Lüpke and Littmann (German *Aksum Expedition*, iii. 47 ff.) state that the Ethiopian church building 'umschließt in ihrer Grundgestalt drei Räume und folgt damit der Gliederung des altjüdischen Tempels, wie auch der abessinische Ritus noch stark mit jüdischen Bestandteilen durchsetzt ist'.

These respectable and independent authorities would appear to warrant that the present writer's views on the relationship between the internal layout of the Ethiopian church building and that of the Hebrew Temple (first voiced in *JSS* 1956, pp. 235-6) do not represent so singular a quirk as M. Rodinson's important, and by no means captious, strictures (*Bi Or*, 1964, p. 243) might imply. It is, of course, true that both the threefold arrangement and its terminology are matters of the greatest complexity: cultural influences are rarely one-sided and straightforward phenomena. But in the present case both the specific evidence and the general Hebraic background seem to favour a large measure of dependence on the Old Testament model.

The outside ambulatory of the three concentric parts of the round church or the vestibule, lobby, or porch of the rectangular church is called *qene mahlet*, i.e. the place where hymns are sung and where the *dablära* or cantors stand. To this part the populace at large has ready access. This outer part corresponds to the *hāzer* of the Tabernacle or the *ulām* of Solomon's Temple. The next chamber is the *qaddast* or *'mda ta'amär* ('place of miracles') which is generally reserved for priests but to which laymen have access for the administration of communion. This is equivalent to the *qodäs* of the Tabernacle or *hekal* of the Solomonic Temple. The innermost part is the *mäqdäs* or *qaddusd* *qaddusan* where the *tabot* rests and to which only senior priests and the king are admitted. This corresponds, of course, to the *qodäs* *haqqodāšim* of the Tabernacle and the *debir* of the Temple.<sup>1</sup> This room is carefully guarded, and by its subdued light or virtual darkness the air of awe and mystery is greatly accentuated.

<sup>1</sup> Contrary to what M. Rodinson says (*Bi Or*, 1964, p. 243), I have not commented on the complex history of this term. In fact, I have referred to the Solomonic *hekal* (*JSS* 1964, p. 235; *The Ethiopians*, p. 309) without even mentioning the Ethiopic *hekal* (cf. Nöldke, *Neue Beiträge*, p. 32) and the connection between these words. See also Ludolf, *Comm.*, p. 267.  
<sup>2</sup> Cf. Exod. 26: 33; 1 Kings 6; Ezek. 40, 41. See also the sketch in Trimmingsham's *Islam in Ethiopia*, p. 31, and the plans in *Aksum Expedition*, pp. 88 ff. Now also Hammerichmidt, *Tafelband*, pp. 90, 94.

It seems clear that the form of the Hebrew sanctuary<sup>1</sup> was preferred by Ethiopians to the basilica type which was accepted by early Christians elsewhere. The requirements of the Ethiopian cult, and particularly the *tabot* or Ark-centred type of worship, made the imitation of the Old Testament form of ecclesiastical building the most suitable choice. Similarly, churches throughout Ethiopia are usually built upon a small hill overlooking the village or, at any rate, at the most elevated place available. The Tosefta mentions the same requirement for the site of a synagogue<sup>2</sup> which is to be erected at the highest point of the town (בגובה של עיר).

#### Music

Ethiopian music and hymnography have not yet received the detailed study which they deserve.<sup>3</sup> Research into the history of Ethiopian music and examination of its contemporary manifestations will require the co-operation of a trained musicologist and a competent *ḥithopisānt*. While the musical notation of the *daggwa* can be studied in Europe (where some excellent manuscripts of this work exist), much of the material will have to be gathered and recorded in Ethiopia.<sup>4</sup> In 1959 I wrote: 'But time is pressing, for the day will come when jazz and rock 'n' roll present a serious challenge to the survival of traditional musical forms in Ethiopia.'<sup>5</sup> Since then the situation has become markedly

<sup>1</sup> 'Iudaeorum templum Hierosolymitanum tribus constabat partibus: vestibulo spatiosum, in quo Iudaei ante fores aedis stabant; ἱερόν ἵερὸν ἄγιον, quae solis sacerdotibus patebat, ut in ea voce tumultu populi tranquille sacra operari possent; ἱερόν ἄγιον, seu sanctis sanctorum; in quod summus sacerdos semel tantum in anno ingrediebatur' (Ludolf, *Comm.*, p. 366).

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Eibogen, *Götterdienst*, p. 433. See also Trimmingsham, op. cit., pp. 26 and 31.  
<sup>3</sup> The following works are relevant: Marius Victorinus appended an excursus *De musica Aethiopum* to his 1553 *Chaldeus seu Aethiopum lingua institutiones* in which he offered some musical transcriptions which have, to my knowledge, never been properly examined; Ludolf, *Compendium*, pp. 268, 380-1. Guidi, *Vocabolario*, cols. 265, 607-8; G. Moisson-Vidalbet's *Musique éthiopienne* (see bibliography) remains the most detailed account of Ethiopian music hitherto published; M. Cohen, 'Couplets Amhariques du Choa', *JA* 1924; idem, 'Sur la notation musicale éthiopienne', *Levi Della Vida Festschrift*, Rome, 1956. E. Wellesz, 'Studica zur aethiopischen Kirchenmusik', *Ormus Christianus*, 1920; *New Oxford History of Africa*, vols. I and II, A. M. Rothemann, *The Music of the Jews*, London, 1953; Guidi, 'Qene o Isaa Abimani', *RAAL* 1900; E. Cerulli, 'Di alcune varietà di inni della chiesa etiopica', *Orientalia*, 1934; idem, 'Canti popolari amarici', *RAAL* 1916; Conti Rossini, *Proverbi, Tradizioni e Canzoni* 1934; idem, 'Verbaule', 1942; E. Littmann, *Aksum, Klegeleseder*, Tübingen, 1949.

<sup>4</sup> J. Tubiana (*Journal of African History*, II, 1961) refers to German Odeon recordings, taken just before the Second World War, and to the records of recordings have been made of both popular and ecclesiastical Ethiopian music, though not in any systematic form. Mrs. Jean Jenkins of the Horniman Museum, London, is now aiming at a collection of records covering as wide a geographical area of Ethiopia as possible and as full a typological representation as can be arranged. A first record, entitled 'Music of the Ethiopian Coptic Church', was published in 1967 by the UNESCO collection.

<sup>5</sup> *The Ethiopians*, p. 173.



more serious, for the impact of contemporary Western modes of musical expression has grown at a rapid pace.

While the importance of music, song and dirge, dance and accompanying instruments, is common to most peoples of the East, we are, I suggest, able to recognize certain specifically Old Testament elements in the musical manifestations, largely of a religious character, of the Ethiopians. The fact as such had been recognized as long ago as Ludolf (*Commentarius*, pp. 380-1) and as recently as Rathjens (*Juden in Abessinien*, p. 48). How powerful the impression of Abyssinia as a living representative of Old Testament times is,<sup>1</sup> the present writer can attest from his own experience and may also be gathered from one of the last of E. Littmann's writings (*Abessinische Klagelieder*):

Abessinien ist ein Land kultureller Fossilien. Was sich in Sitte und Brauch, in sprachlicher Ausdrucksweise und in Formen der Dichtkunst bei den Völkern, die in Afrika und Asien den Abessiniern verwandt sind, nur teilweise erhalten hat oder durch gelehrte Arbeit erschlossen worden ist, konnte ich vor 40 Jahren im nördlichen Abessinien noch mehrfach in lebender Gestalt beobachten (p. 3).

Littmann also speaks (p. 4) of the 'Vergleichsmaterial' which Ethiopia offers in this sphere for Old Testament studies and for an examination of the survival of ancient customs. His particular interest had been engaged by the metric and rhythmic form of Ethiopian poetical texts, 'da sie genau der entspricht, wie sie in den hebräischen Liedern des Alten Testaments gebräuchlich war'. Littmann even encountered here the 'Klagelieder-Rhythmus' which had been recognized in Old Testament Hebrew poetry only during the last century.

Professor Gavino Gabriel, an authority on Ethiopian music, says (in an unpublished note): 'L'Abissino parla e canta in "falsetto" o "voix de tête" . . . esso rappresenta una economia di fiato; si che l'abissino può cantare tutta la vita senza dare segno di stanchezza.' A similar tireless capacity seems to have been attributed to the Levites in 1 Chronicles 23: 30.<sup>2</sup> It is likely that the falsetto element was prominent in the vocal parts of the

<sup>1</sup> M. Rodinson sounds a note of warning (*Si Oï*, 1964, pp. 243-4) against the acceptance of comparisons based on impression. This caution is, of course, wholly justified. At the same time, comparisons and influences, in the nature of things, do not yield to the type of precise analysis which is otherwise so desirable. Of course, many facets are not peculiar to the world of the Old Testament and that of Ethiopia but extend beyond that to the ancient Orient in general. In such cases we can do no other than examine these features and their development and assess the probabilities of borrowings and influences in the light of the special circumstances obtaining in Ethiopia.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Benzinger, *Hebr. Arch.*, pp. 245-53, and esp. p. 252; de Vaux, *Ancient Israel*, pp. 301, 457; Rothmüller, *op. cit.*, index under 'Levites' and 'singing'.

Hebrew Temple services, and it would appear that the occasional indications to that effect in the Old Testament may not always have been properly understood. Among obscure musical terms in the Hebrew Bible (especially in Psalms and Chronicles) occurs על עלמות (Ps. 46: 1; 1 Chron. 15: 20). Koehler (*Lexicon*, p. 709) considers this an 'unexplained term of [musical] execution', but Gesenius-Buhl had already advanced the view 'mit Mädchenstimmen, mit hoher Stimme, im Sopran'. And Ben Yehuda (*Thesaurus*, p. 4527) renders this expression 'Soprano, falsetto'. In Chronicles (*loc. cit.*) על עלמות occurs in connexion with an instrument (*nabālīm*) rather than the human voice, and Rothmüller (*op. cit.*, p. 26) has explained this, correctly I think, as 'high-pitched *nabālīm*'.

There is another expression which has not, perhaps, been accurately understood: *qōl rām* (Deut. 27: 14) is not, I would tentatively suggest, 'with a loud voice' (for that invariably is *qōl gādōl*),<sup>3</sup> but this singular combination is likely to refer to high-pitched, falsetto voice. Similarly, *herim qōl* may have a musical connotation, though I do not claim that this is invariably the case. In Deuteronomy 27: 14 it is the Levites who are reciting with *qōl rām*. They, as the Temple singers and choristers<sup>4</sup> (1 Chron. 16: 4, 23: 30; 2 Chron. 8: 14), were eminently qualified to produce the high pitch required. We have here, therefore, a number of technical musical terms (addressed to the skilled Levite Temple musicians 'die eine große und wohlorganisierte Zunft bildeten')<sup>5</sup>—1 Chronicles 25: 1 ff.) rather than indications of mere volume of voice.

The Levites<sup>6</sup> had been set apart for the service of the Ark and for choral functions. The twofold division of the Israelite priesthood is paralleled in Ethiopia by the categories of *kahn* and *dābtāra*.<sup>7</sup> The office of the latter is in most respects comparable to the tasks entrusted to the Levites, particularly in their role as cantors and choristers. That had already been recognized by B. Tellez (L. i, c. 39, fol. 95) who is quoted by Ludolf<sup>8</sup> as stating: *dābtāra*: 'vulgo etiam sic vocatur *Canonicus*, qui ex Levitis originem ducit, ut putant, quorum officium in templis Aethiopis est cantare et crotala pulsare.' Ludolf himself also sees this

<sup>3</sup> The LXX employs the same *φωνή μεγάλη*, without change of adjective, for *qōl rām* and *qōl gādōl*; so does the Go'az Bible, but the Amharic version, following the Arabic text (see p. 64, above), distinguishes clearly between *rām* and *gādōl*.

<sup>4</sup> De Vaux, *op. cit.*, pp. 391-2.

<sup>5</sup> De Vaux, *op. cit.*, pp. 358-71.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Pollard, *Stato etopico e la sua chiesa*, p. 103. *Dābtāra* is probably derived from *ḏābtāra* (see Langg. *of Ethiopia*, p. 110).

<sup>7</sup> *Lexicon Aethiopo-Latinum*, Frankfurt, 1699, col. 304.

<sup>8</sup> Benzinger, *Hebr. Arch.*, p. 252.







or ten strings; it is of much greater size than the *kavar* and usually rests on the floor beside the player's chair. There does not seem to be a Biblical string instrument which corresponds to the *māsāngā*,<sup>1</sup> the one-stringed fiddle.

*Tof*<sup>2</sup> is a type of kettledrum which, like its Ethiopian counterpart, the *kābāro*,<sup>3</sup> is probably one of the earliest and most ubiquitous musical instruments. The *kābāro* is made of a hollowed-out tree-trunk and its size will vary accordingly. Its primary function, in the ceremonies of Temple and Church, is to indicate rhythm. The *mana'an'im*, rendered by the Amharic version as *nāgarit*, is certainly not the 'drum' which the Amharic text would suggest. The Revised Version's translation 'castanets' is possibly near the truth, and the Septuagint's 'cymbals' deserves serious consideration because the clashing movements of the two brass plates might reflect the meaning of Hebrew *mana'an'im* (perhaps it should be vowelled as a dual?). *Ṣōṣalīm* corresponds, no doubt also etymologically,<sup>4</sup> to *śinnayit* 'sistrum'. The monotonous but highly effective hypnotic sound of this rattle plays an important part in all church services—as no doubt it did in ancient Israelite worship: Psalm 150: 5 distinguishes two types of *ṣōṣalīm*, *ṣema'* and *ṭrūā*, among the formidable orchestral array mentioned in that psalm, but we have no knowledge at all in what way they differed.

The scene which this verse (2 Sam. 6: 5) depicts may still be witnessed in Ethiopia today in substantially the same form and atmosphere. Ethiopians themselves are deeply conscious of the Old Testament flavour with which many of their contemporary religious ceremonies are imbued: there is the dancing,<sup>5</sup> the beating of the drums, the rattling of the sistrum, the plucking of lyres and harps. There is nothing in this scene<sup>6</sup> that would compel us to place it in the twentieth century A.D. rather than the tenth century B.C.

<sup>1</sup> See Buxton, *op. cit.*, pls. 19 and 20; Hyatt, *op. cit.*, p. 135; Monden-Vidalhet, *op. cit.*, p. 3186.

<sup>2</sup> *LXX ὑπερνον* is probably related, either etymologically or possibly onomatopoeically, to *tof*.

<sup>3</sup> Buxton, *op. cit.*, pl. 30.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Barth, *Nominalbildung*, § 138, 2; Brockelmann, *Grundriss*, I, 247; Nöldeke, *Neue Beiträge*, p. 48.

<sup>5</sup> See Hammerichsen, *Tafelberg*, p. 213. This is, of course, a plural form, and its proper rendering is 'sistrum'.

<sup>6</sup> Lieberman, in a personal letter to the present writer, dated 11 June 1956, wrote: 'When we were at Aksum sitting before the "Church of Sion" and watched the dances of the priests, we thought that we were among King Solomon before the temple of Jerusalem watching the Israelite priests dancing.'

<sup>7</sup> Cf. the illustrations in Dorese, *op. cit.*, p. 65; Ullendorff, *The Ethiopians*, pls. viib, viib, xia.

The Ethiopic *daggwa*<sup>1</sup> or hymnary exhibits an elaborate system of musical notation (*malakat*) which marks the liturgical chant (*zema*) and which reminds us in many ways of the Biblical *ḥāmim* and *naginat* or *ῥόμος*. On the whole it would seem rather unlikely that there could exist any direct connexion between these two systems of cantillation. They were both introduced in medieval times, but it is probable that the tradition on which they are based goes back a good deal further. We are still not quite certain when the Biblical 'accents' came into use, but this development is bound to have occurred during the second half of the first millennium A.D. Similar uncertainty surrounds the Ethiopian system, but I. Guidi (*Vocabolario Amarico*, col. 265, note 1) has supported the view that the signs of the *daggwa* were introduced under the Emperor Claudius (1540-59). Ethiopians themselves attribute the invention of the *zema* notation to Yared who is said to have conceived the idea under the inspiration of the Holy Ghost.<sup>2</sup> It is the Ethiopian view, however, that not the *zema* or plain-song as such was evolved at that time but merely its graphic expression. The musical recitation of the psalms, as preserved in Ethiopia, is alleged to have an Hebraic origin and to reflect the modes of chanting practised in the days of David and Solomon.<sup>3</sup> While the traditional view is somewhat extravagant in its claims, it would be wrong to dismiss it out of hand and to deny that there might be certain aspects of the received recitation and its notation which are old and which have retained some authentic elements. It is not altogether impossible that South Arabian Jews were the carriers of such a musical or recitative tradition which took root in Ethiopia.

The Hebrew structure<sup>4</sup> appears to derive its origin, at least in part, from the neume notation of the Greek gospels—as Praetorius (*op. cit.*) has shown with some cogency. The original function of the Biblical signs was almost certainly syntactic; a correct distribution of the syntactical elements had hermeneutical significance and, in the nature of things, also established the sentence rhythm. This gave rise to the musical phrasing of the scriptural passage concerned. There exist different modes of cantillation for the Pentateuch and the Prophets; and

<sup>1</sup> The finest *daggwa* manuscript known to me is the eighteenth-century *Daggwa* in the Bodleian Library (cf. Ullendorff, *Catalogue*, no. 52). See also pl. xviii in Grébaut-Tuserant's catalogue of Vatican Ethiopic MSS.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Dillmann, *Chrestomathie*, pp. 34 ff.; Monden-Vidalhet, *op. cit.*, p. 3186.

<sup>3</sup> This view is also reported by Monden-Vidalhet, *op. cit.*, p. 3186.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. the detailed treatment of the Biblical system by Rothmüller, *op. cit.*, pp. 79 ff. Praetorius, *Über die Herkunft der hebraischen Accente*, Berlin, 1901; Elbogen, *op. cit.*, p. 505. Kahle in Bauer-Leander's *Hist. Gram. d. hebr. Sprache*, § 9.



the books of Lamentations and Esther have a system of their own.

Unfortunately, similar spade-work has not hitherto been undertaken for the notation of the *dagwa*. We know, of course, that the musical signs consist of letters as well as dots and circles which are placed above the syllable to which they refer; they indicate the raising or lowering of the voice as well as other modes of voice production. We are in urgent need of a comprehensive examination of the Ethiopian system, and it would be well to bear in mind what we know of the Hebrew as well as other Oriental cantillation and notation methods. Marcel Cohen has recently given us a brief and valuable survey of existing knowledge on this subject,<sup>1</sup> including some important indications by Abba Jérôme.<sup>2</sup>

On a cursory examination I have been unable to detect any noticeable Greek traces, but this will need to be verified by someone more versed in these matters than I can claim to be. On the other hand, there appears to be a possibility of certain resemblances with the Hebrew Biblical system. This would seem to apply to the chanting rules as well as the meaning of some of the signs in common use, although I am unable to account for the way by which such connexions could have come about. I set out below, with some hesitation, the Ethiopian signs and their possible Hebrew equivalents in meaning as well as musical significance. It need scarcely be stressed that this is a very tentative outline:

አርፋ:	אָרָא	'rapid'
አርፋር፡	מִרְכָּא	'hold on, repeat'
አፋር:	מָנוח	'rest'
አፋር፡፡	חֲבִיר	'break'
አፋ:	קִדְמָא	'forward'

As far as I know, the Ethiopian signs do not exhibit any of the syntactical or hermeneutical functions which the Biblical *qamets* possess; their object seems to be exclusively concerned with the indication of the correct liturgical chant. Villoteau had already recognized the division of the *zema* into three modes or moods: 'ḡ'az pour les jours de fête; 'azil pour les jours de jeûne et de

<sup>1</sup> 'Sur la notation musicale éthiopienne' (see p. 89, note 3). See also G. A. Villoteau in *Description de l'Égypte*, and ed. xiv (1926), 270-96; Zoltenberg, *Catalogue*, no. 67; photostats of a manuscript of the same, with musical notation in part, in Mercer's *Ethiopic Liturgy*; Märrä's Hazzan, *ḡl-amorāḡā alḡawā*, Addis Ababa, 1942/3, p. 211.

<sup>2</sup> For Abba Jérôme Cabré Muz see Cohen, *Proc. Acad.*, p. 248.

carême, pour les veilles de fêtes et pour les cérémonies funèbres; 'arazay aux principales fêtes de l'année.' A similar division exists, of course, also in the case of the Hebrew *niggunim* which vary in very much the same manner.

#### Liturgy

No attempt can here be made to investigate the Hebraic-Jewish background of the liturgy of the Ethiopian Church; such a study remains an important desideratum and naturally requires a monograph of its own. I shall here limit myself to a few hints in directions where further research is likely to be fruitful. The main difficulty in such an investigation derives from the pervasive influence which the liturgy of the Temple and, later on, the synagogue has exerted on services of the Christian Church in general and on the Oriental Christian Churches in particular.<sup>1</sup> It is, therefore, not always easy to disentangle strands peculiar to the Ethiopian Church that may reveal special dependence on Hebrew liturgical forms.

King Zar'a Ya'qob had decreed in his *Māshafā Berhan*<sup>2</sup> that religious instruction should be part of the divine worship. That tradition of 'learning' as an integral part of the service was undoubtedly inspired by the Second Temple and the early synagogue: interpretation, discussion, exegesis of the Scriptures go back at least to the days of Ezra<sup>3</sup> and are reflected in the terminology. Both Midrash and Haggadah owe their origin to the didactic part of the service (cf. *rois* ὁρίζουσιν εἰσελθόντες εἰς τὴν συναγωγὴν ἐδίδασκεν—Mark 1: 21). Ethiopic *dārāsā*, *modras*, *dorsan* are used in virtually the same sense as their Hebrew or Jewish Aramaic equivalents.<sup>4</sup> *Māmhar* (root *mhr* 'to teach'; reflex. 'to learn') is a 'teacher', 'doctor', or prior of a monastery, and this

<sup>1</sup> See W. O. E. Oesterley, *The Jewish Background of the Christian Liturgy*, Oxford, 1925; J. Schürmann, 'Hebrew Liturgical Poetry and Christian Hymnology', *JQR*, October 1953, pp. 123-61; Mercer, *The Ethiopic Liturgy* (see also below); Hammerichmidt, *Kultymbild.*, pp. 123-61; Idem, *Studien in die Ethiope Anaphora*, Berlin, 1961; Elbogen, *Gottesdienst, hebr.*, pp. 222 ff.; Idem, *Studien in die Ethiope Anaphora*, vols. Aeth. 47, 48, 51, 52. See esp. vol. 51, pp. 30 ff. Also Dillmann, *Kirchenordnung*, pp. 36 and 51 ff.

<sup>2</sup> I entirely agree with M. Rodinson (*Si Or*, 1964, p. 241) that the object of Zar'a Ya'qob's prescriptions was 'à faire mieux pénétrer les bases du christianisme dans l'âme des fidèles'. I am not, of course, concerned here with motives but merely with the forms and the framework used to achieve these objects.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Elbogen, *op. cit.*, pp. 79, 194 ff.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Nöldike, *Neue Beiträge*, p. 38. Rodinson (*loc. cit.*) is not on firm ground when he argues that this terminology might just as well be derived from Syriac. Not only are the concepts Jewish, but the Ethiopic forms tally with their Hebrew rather than their Syriac counterparts (cf. Polotsky, *JSS* 1964, pp. 4 ff.). This is further confirmed by *alḡawā* (see below).

<sup>5</sup> Hebrew and Arabic 'skilled, able'.



term is very largely coextensive with the Hebrew *hakam*. To the same category belongs *tärgwamä*<sup>1</sup> 'to interpret, expound, paraphrase' with a range of meaning similar to that in its Jewish connotation. The labio-velar sound in the Ethiopic form goes clearly back to an original *targum* which shows that this concept entered Abyssinia through Jewish influences from South Arabia rather than by way of the Syrian missionaries of the fourth and fifth centuries A.D.

The reading of the Scriptures and their exposition as an integral part of the church service had, of course, been taken over by early Christians from the practice of the synagogue.<sup>2</sup> But in the Ethiopic worship that reading occupies a rather more central place and is strongly reminiscent of synagogal arrangements. Zar'a Ya'qob had reaffirmed that the books of the Old and New Testaments were to be read in their entirety during church services and, in the manner of the *parašah* and the *haftarah*, he placed special emphasis on the reading from the Law and the Prophets.<sup>3</sup> The impression of a strong resemblance between the Hebrew *qari'ah* and its Ethiopian counterpart is heightened by the not easily definable Hebraic atmosphere with which the Abyssinian service-ritual is imbued and, above all, by the musical rendering (cantillation) of the recitation.<sup>4</sup>

Antiphonal singing as part of the worship was an established form of the Hebrew liturgy since the earliest times (Exod. 15: 1 and 21)<sup>5</sup> and was taken over by the Christian Church, especially in the Eastern rites of the Jacobite Syrians and the Copts. It is unlikely, however, that Hebraic forms were anywhere more faithfully preserved than in the Ethiopian service with its emphasis on the *däbtära* 'cantor' and antiphony. In both the Jewish and the Abyssinian services the performance varies 'from simple recitation to elaborate cantillation with the character of the feast and in accordance with the liturgical prescription for the particular part of the service'.<sup>6</sup> It was Conti Rossini's authoritative verdict that 'nei riti, la chiesa abissina ha conservato non pochi tratti arcaici: così l'isolamento del *sanctum sanctorum*. Il

<sup>1</sup> Nöldeke, *op. cit.*, p. 39. Examples of similar terminology will be dealt with in the excursus on linguistic factors below.

<sup>2</sup> Oesterley, *op. cit.*, pp. 111 ff.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. above the section on music and especially chapter x on the 'lectio solennis' of the *Lectura* in E. Wellesz's most valuable *History of Byzantine Music and Hymnography*. M. Rodinson has rightly warned (*op. cit.*, p. 242) that 'une impression non définissable se rattache souvent être une illusion', but in the present case the impression is one that has been widely reported by people of very different backgrounds. Besides there is a good deal of hard evidence to strengthen this impression.

<sup>4</sup> Later developments are described by Eliason, *op. cit.*, pp. 302 ff.

<sup>5</sup> Wellesz, *op. cit.*, p. 27.

## PLATE III



Priest reading from the Bible  
Photo HOSKING



Traditional Court. Scene at Saganeti  
(see p. 4)



canto liturgico è accompagnato dal suono dei sistri e dal cadenzato battere dei piedi: i cantori o *debtara* intercalano il canto dei salmi con quello di brevi poesie (*geniē*) da essi improvvisate.<sup>1</sup>

The significance of hymns and psalms in the worship of the Ethiopians had already been noted with disapproval by Lobo. After having disposed of circumcision as an obviously Jewish custom he continues:

The Jewish rites are in many other instances observed by the Abyssins; one brother takes the wife of another; the men do not enter a church the day after they have conversed with their wives; nor do the women come to the divine worship after childbirth, till the days of their purification are over. . . . Their manner of chaunting the Psalms has a great conformity with that of the Jews: And indeed in so many things do they agree, that it would not be easy to determine whether the Abyssins are more Jews or Christians.<sup>2</sup>

The attachment of Ethiopians to psalter and hymnary and the enormous number of Ethiopic manuscripts of this genre almost defy description. Most service books containing the complete psalter are followed by the *qḏaś*, a collection of usually nine odes which make up the basic text of the Morning office and which constitute a fairly close parallel to the Hebrew *Qyroba*,<sup>3</sup> i.e. the poetical passages inserted into the *Tefillah*. These odes consist generally of eight hymnal pieces from the Old Testament and one from the New Testament.

Details of the present Ethiopian liturgy may be studied in S. A. B. Mercer's *Ethiopic Liturgy* which contains facsimiles of the Ethiopic text. Despite many imperfections (some of which were pointed out by F. Praetorius in a review published in *ZDMG* 1916) this has remained a useful work which conveys to the student of liturgics an adequate idea of the Hebraic foundations of the Ethiopic service—overlaid as it is with Christian trappings which somehow seem to have failed to remove the unmistakable Jewish background.<sup>4</sup>

The *Trisagion*<sup>5</sup> in particular reveals its development from the *Qḏuṣṣah* (cf. *qḏdase*). We still know far too little of the original form and later development of the Ethiopic liturgy, though in recent years E. Hamerschmidt has applied his knowledge of

<sup>1</sup> *Etiopia e genti d'Etiopia*, p. 180.

<sup>2</sup> Lobo, *Voyage in Abyssinie*, p. 301. See also Rathjens, op. cit., p. 50.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Elbogen, op. cit., pp. 212 ff.; Schürmann, op. cit., *passim* but esp. pp. 150-1; Welles, op. cit., pp. 168 ff.

<sup>4</sup> See also *Adibay's Qḏdase*, published by the Vatican Library, Rome, 1915, and the *Qḏas and Amharic Afḥarṣa Qḏdase* published at Addis Ababa, 1942/3.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Mercer, op. cit., pp. 323 ff.; Oesterley, op. cit., pp. 142 ff.; Hamerschmidt, *Etiopische Anaphoras*, pp. 32, 86 ff., 105 ff.











*Ritual cleanness*

A few brief words must here be added on the subject of ritual cleanness. Again, this is not—as M. Rodinson has rightly said<sup>1</sup>—‘spéciale à l’Éthiopie’, although it is admittedly due to influence ‘incontestablement juive’. However, even if some of the principles, on which the Ethiopian Church bases its adherence to these Old Testament laws, are applicable to the Coptic Church as a whole, the Abyssinian observance is both more detailed and strict in its imitation of Hebraic practice.

Fitness for contact with the consecrated included abstinence from sexual relations. This is expressly stated in Exodus 19: 15; Leviticus 12: 2, 15: 19 ff.; 1 Samuel 21: 4–6, etc. And, similarly, in the *Fatha Nagast* (Guidi ed., p. 114) we find:

ወደቤት፡ ብሉል፡ ጥብብ፡ ብሉል፡ ለመጥባል፡ ይቻላል።

And a man may not sleep with his wife during the days of fasting.

The *Fatha Nagast* (p. 169) also enumerates all the other occasions on which sexual intercourse between husband and wife is forbidden, i.e. during the days of menstruation or any other impurity.<sup>2</sup> That this is not here a general Semitic ban, but the result of Hebraic law, is expressly stated (loc. cit.): ጥንክር፡ አላዘዘኝ፡ እንዲሁ፡ ብሉል፡ ጥብብ፡ ብሉል፡ ለመጥባል፡ ይቻላል። ‘remember what God has commanded thee by the mouth of Moses’; and then follows a quotation from (or paraphrase of) Leviticus 20: 18.

M. Rodinson (loc. cit.) finds it ‘remarquable’ that I should cite the *Fatha Nagast*, originally a document addressed to the Copts in general, in support of my contentions. But, in the first place, there are a number of significant additions in the Ethiopic text which are absent from the Arabic original (e.g. Guidi, transl., p. 249). And, secondly, many of these regulations have long passed into desuetude in the Coptic Church of Egypt (if they were ever observed at all), while in Ethiopia they were, and are, strictly adhered to. That this was so, long before the *Fatha Nagast* was translated into Ge’az, may be gathered from Zar’a Ya’qob’s *Māḥafā Barhan*—and there seems little doubt that the prescriptions in the latter go back to a long-standing attachment and fidelity to the Old Testament position.

The regulations in the *Māḥafā Barhan* will be found in part ii, pp. 7–13, of the Conti Rossini-Ricci edition.<sup>3</sup> Anyone who has been rendered unclean by intercourse, seminal flow, or menstruation must not enter a church be he priest or layman. These

<sup>1</sup> *Et Or.* 1954, p. 244.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *The Ethiopians*, p. 138.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. also *Makrah Toharah, Miqwa’oth, Niddah, passim*.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. also Dillmann, *Kirchenordnung*, pp. 31–32.

prohibitions are set out in considerable detail, and in their attention to particulars and in their casuistry fall little short of the minutiae of Talmudic disquisitions. They are based on—and indeed cite in *extenso*—the passages in Exodus 19: 15 ff. and 1 Samuel 21: 4–6. Study of the Old Testament regulations relating to ritual cleanness<sup>1</sup> makes one strongly aware of the milieu in which the Ethiopian practice has developed. Here again the specifically Biblical character can be recognized, for similar customs among the early Arabs<sup>2</sup> differed in several significant aspects, notably the exclusion of men from defilement.

Observers of the Ethiopian scene who approached things with an innocent eye, such as Mansfield Parkyns,<sup>3</sup> have always come away with the impression that this emphasis laid on the distinction between ‘cleanness or uncleanness is purely Mosaic’:

A man who is, for certain reasons, unclean cannot enter the church till he is purified. Among other causes of uncleanness, to have entered a room where a child has been recently born is . . . sufficient to render one unclean; to have touched polluted garments is another cause; and many more might be named,<sup>4</sup> but that they are mostly to be found in the book of Jewish law.

The situation as regards ritual purity differs very little among the Falashas,<sup>5</sup> and both they and their Christian compatriots derive their ideas from their loyalty to the laws of the Old Testament.

*Circumcision*

Herodotus (ii. 104) thought that ‘the Colchians, Egyptians, and Ethiopians are the only nations of the world who, from the first, have practised circumcision. . . . Of the Egyptians and Ethiopians I am unable to say which learnt it from the other, for it is evidently a very ancient custom.’<sup>6</sup> We now know that this custom was not confined to Egyptians, Ethiopians, and Semites, but was—and indeed is—widely practised in Africa, Australia, and America. The significance of the rite and the age at which it is performed vary: in some cases it appears to be a tribal badge, in others an initiation rite or a preliminary to marriage. There are, of course, other explanations as well, and

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Benzinger, *Hebr. Arch.*, § 80; W. Robertson Smith, *Religion of the Semites*, pp. 4–6 ff.

<sup>2</sup> Wellhausen, *Kulte*, p. 170.

<sup>3</sup> *Life in Abyssinia*, p. 391.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Rathjens, op. cit., p. 38.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Leslau, *Falasha Anthology*, p. 212; idem, *Customs of Crepanes*, pp. 28–29.

<sup>6</sup> Herodotus, translated from Bähr’s text by Henry Cary, London, 1891.











and agape as our fathers, the Apostles, have commanded us in the Didascalia.

Yet, even Claudius cannot deny the observance of the Sabbath as such, though in his contrasting description of the Jewish and Ethiopian celebrations he comes close to what Hammerschmidt<sup>1</sup> has aptly characterized as an 'apologetischen Kunstgriff'. The distinction had to be made mainly on doctrinal grounds,<sup>2</sup> for no one could seriously dispute the existence of these Hebraic practices. The Emperor Susenyos who, in the early seventeenth century, embraced the Roman Faith even resorted to outright banning of the Sabbath celebration: 'Sabbati observationem, tanquam Judaicam et Christianis moribus adversam, edicto publico prohibuit.'<sup>3</sup> But he encountered heavy opposition, and even penalties did not avail.

The conception and observance in Ethiopia of the Old Testament Sabbath drew support from a number of unimpeachable sources:<sup>4</sup> chapter xxxviii of the *Ethiopic Didascalia*<sup>5</sup> enjoins the keeping of both the Sabbath and the Sunday. Gregory of Nyssa—whose authority among Ethiopians stands high—had argued: 'quibus oculis diem Dominicam intueris, qui Sabbatum decorasti? au nescis, hos dies germanos esse, ac si in alterum injurius sis, te in alterum impingere?'<sup>6</sup> And, perhaps, most significantly: is not the continued validity of the Decalogue and the Law expressly prescribed in Matthew 5: 18 that 'one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the Law?'<sup>7</sup>

M. Rodinson maintains, rightly, that 'la pratique [of observing both Saturday and Sunday] était courante aux origines du christianisme',<sup>8</sup> but only in some of the Oriental Christian Churches has it survived.<sup>9</sup> In the Coptic Church of Egypt as

<sup>1</sup> *Sabbat*, p. 53.

<sup>2</sup> The same reservation applies to the discussion in chapter xix of the *Fetha Nagast* (which, in its basic tenets, reflects the position of the Coptic Church in Egypt) where anxiety to distinguish Christian from Jewish observance of the Sabbath goes hand in hand with the injunction that servants are to work on five days of the week only and to attend for religious instruction on Saturday and Sunday. See now also Hammerschmidt, *Sabbat*, pp. 58-61.

<sup>3</sup> Ludolf, *Historia*, iii, 10, 64.

<sup>4</sup> Among these the Old Testament has naturally pride of place: 'Et sabbata custodite, ut in lege Moyses praecepit, et in libro omnium prophetarum, et in canonibus sanctorum apostolorum patrum nostrorum' (Turaiev, *Acta S. Eusebii*, p. 18).

<sup>5</sup> Cf. J. M. Harden's translation: *The Ethiopic Didascalia*; T. P. Flavi's edition (*The Ethiopic Didascalia*) was, unfortunately, based on an incomplete manuscript.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Ludolf, *Historia*, iii, 1, 55. See also Hammerschmidt, op. cit., note 382 (though I cannot accept H.'s structure, since Ludolf does quote the source and Ludolf's work is one to which all *ethiops* have ready access).

<sup>7</sup> This had also been the argument used by Abba Gregory, Ludolf's friend (*Comm.*, p. 276).

<sup>8</sup> *St Or.*, 1964, p. 240.

<sup>9</sup> In the case of the Seventh Day Adventists it is, of course, likewise an aspect of the emulation of the Old Testament.

well as the monophysite Church of Ethiopia it was the influence and veneration of the Old Testament which had brought about this state of affairs. Yet the closer approximation to Old Testament practice and its enduring importance in Ethiopia represent a singular phenomenon which has to be evaluated in association with the Judaic elements from South Arabia which had crossed the Red Sea in the early centuries of the first millennium A.D.<sup>1</sup>

The observance of the Sabbath constitutes the major concern of Zar'a Ya'qob's *Māṣḥafā Berhan*. The doctrinal and historical background<sup>2</sup> has been authoritatively sketched by Dillmann in his *Kirchenordnung* (esp. pp. 47 ff.), but we now also possess the complete text edited by Conti Rossini and Ricci. In his preface (vol. i, transl., pp. ii and iii) Ricci says: 'ma sugli altri argomenti hanno la preminenza l'imposizione dell'osservanza del sabato, di cui si dimostra e si sancisce la canonicità con l'autorità dei libri sacri . . .' and again he finds that Sabbath observance constitutes 'l'argomento su cui insiste lo scritto per tutta la sua estensione, ripetutamente tornandovi sopra'.<sup>3</sup> A cursory glance at the text suffices to establish the centrality of the Sabbath theme in this famous medieval treatise: 'As the creation of darkness preceded that of light, thus the observance of the Sabbath preceded that of the Sunday. Hence it was called the 'first Sabbath' because Sunday was given after it, but the Apostles established Sabbath and Sunday as one day . . .'.<sup>4</sup> Detailed regulations are issued as regards work that is not permitted on the Sabbath,<sup>5</sup> and the entire book exhibits an almost passionate preoccupation with the importance of the Sabbath.

This anxious concern of the *Māṣḥafā Berhan* arises, of course, from the doubts and acute theological struggles which characterized the era of Zar'a Ya'qob's predecessors, and it was not until the middle of the fifteenth century that the firm grip of that great king and reformer resolved those difficulties. It has sometimes been argued<sup>6</sup> that the celebration and sanctity of the

<sup>1</sup> It is in this sense that I would wish to reinterpret the passages in Doresse, *L'Empire de Fetha Jean*, ii, 115, note 1, pp. 152-3. Cf. also K. Wendt in *Acta del Congreso*, p. 140.

<sup>2</sup> See also Cerulli, *Storia*, pp. 135 ff.; idem, *Minacci di Muro*, pp. 94 ff.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. also Hammerschmidt, *Sabbat*, pp. 19-35, which contains a helpful summary of the contents of the *Māṣḥafā Berhan* (written before the publication of the Conti Rossini-Ricci edition).

<sup>4</sup> See also Wendt in *Acta del Congreso*, p. 146, idem, *Māṣḥafā Berhan*, i (transl.), 87 ff. (= text, pp. 99 ff.).

<sup>5</sup> *Māṣḥafā Berhan*, ii (text), 60.

<sup>6</sup> Op. cit., pp. 6-7, Dillmann, *Kirchenordnung*, pp. 49-50. Zar'a Ya'qob's list of what is allowed or prohibited on the two Sabbaths makes interesting reading in the light of Jewish practice and reveals, incidentally, an astonishing measure of knowledge as well as misconception of the latter. See now also Hammerschmidt, *Sabbat*, pp. 27-30.

<sup>7</sup> e.g. by Conti Rossini, *Etiopia e genti d'Etiopia*, p. 181.



Sabbath were, in fact, introduced by Zar'a Ya'qob. This I find hard to accept, for what the latter did was, above all, the successful removal of the threatening schism between the two great monastic orders. The main point at issue in this theological controversy was the strict observance of the two Sabbaths (Saturday and Sunday) by the northern Eustathian monks,<sup>1</sup> mainly based on Debra Bizen. By deciding the dispute in favour of the followers of Eustathius, Zar'a Ya'qob did not introduce a new conception of the equality of the two Sabbaths, but merely gave preference to the long-established northern tradition which, in the original home of the Semitized Aksumites, had always preserved Judaic ingredients more faithfully than the somewhat 'diluted' southern tradition.<sup>2</sup> There can thus be little doubt, to my mind, that the status of the Sabbath in Ethiopian Christianity derives from the veneration of the Old Testament and from the imitation of the Hebraic lore contained in it.<sup>3</sup> This tendency was buttressed by the leaven of Judaic practice introduced into Ethiopia from South Arabia in the early centuries of the Christian era.

Moving towards recent times, we note that in the 1840s W. C. Harris<sup>4</sup> found that

the Jewish Sabbath is strictly observed throughout the kingdom. The ox and the ass are at rest. Agricultural pursuits are suspended. Household avocations must be laid aside, and the spirit of idleness reigns throughout the day . . . and when, a few years ago, one daring spirit presumed, in advance of the age, to burst the fetters of superstition, His Majesty the King of Shoa,<sup>5</sup> stimulated by the advice of besotted monks, issued a proclamation<sup>6</sup> that whoso violated the Jewish Sabbath should forfeit his property to the royal treasury, and be consigned to the state dungeon.

For the present time, Conti Rossini states:<sup>7</sup> 'si considera obbligatoria l'osservanza del sabato, al pari di quella della domenica.' Similar verdicts may be found in many other contemporary

<sup>1</sup> On Eustathius (fourteenth century) and the Eustathian order see Ludolf, *Historia*, iii, 3, 29 ff.; *Commentarius*, pp. 286, 434; Dillmann, *Kirchenordnung*, pp. 45 ff.; Lammann, *Gesch. d. äth. Lit.*, pp. 204, 212, 230, 244; Guedi, *Storia d. lit. et.*, p. 59; idem in *OM* 1922, pp. 127-8, 187; Turstev, *Acta S. Eustathii* (C.S.G.O., 32) (Acta. 15); Conti Rossini-Ricci, *Mappafà Berhan*, ii, 145 ff. (= transl. p. 82).

<sup>2</sup> Thus also Rodinson, despite reservations of various kinds, in *St Or*, 1964, p. 245: 'cela implique une imitation de l'Ancien Testament.'

<sup>3</sup> *Highlands of Ethiopia*, iii, 150-1.

<sup>4</sup> i.e. King Sahla Sellamie, ancestor of the Emperor Haile Selassie I.

<sup>5</sup> The Amharic text of this proclamation is not known to me, but it is interesting and relevant to compare the text of the Sabbath observance proclamation issued in 1928 and printed on p. 345 of Balambas Mantamä Salase's *Zürä nägär* (Addis Ababa, 1949/50). See also Eadie, *Amharic Reader*, p. 183.

<sup>7</sup> *L'Abissinie*, p. 82.

works, among them Hyatt's *Church of Abyssinia* (p. 224), Rathjens's *Juden in Abessinien* (p. 53), Pollera's *L'Abissinie di ieri* (p. 153), etc.<sup>1</sup> Finally, it is instructive to look at the entry *snbt* in the various dictionaries of the modern Ethiopian languages, both for the terminology and the substance of Sabbath observance: Baeteman (*Dictionnaire*, col. 212) maintains that 'les Éthiopiens conservent une partie de la loi mosaïque conjointement avec la loi chrétienne. Ils ont gardé les deux *sānbāi*.' Coulbeaux-Schreiber (*Dictionnaire de la langue Tigrāi*, p. 243) also find that 'les Éthiopiens, conservant les deux lois, ont gardé les deux *sānbāi*'.

#### Concluding observations

It would not be difficult to extend the list of parallels and influences demonstrating the abiding impact of the Bible in general, and the Old Testament in particular, on Abyssinian Christianity and on the fabric of Ethiopian society. This impact goes far beyond anything experienced in the other Oriental Christian Churches and cannot be accounted for by general references to the Judaizing character of the early Church in the East. A case in point is the feasts and fasts observed by the Church in Ethiopia. Of course, the relationship between Christian forms and their Old Testament substratum is generally one of great complexity.

The Ethiopian New Year (1 Mäskärām = 11 September) is almost certainly related to *roš haš-šana*; its date, as well as that of *Mäsqāl* ('feast of the cross'), corresponds closely to the Hebrew season of the *yamim nora'im*.<sup>2</sup> With the introduction of Christianity into Ethiopia it became necessary to transform the celebration of the New Year into a Christian feast—without undue interference with the deep-rooted religious practices and customs traditionally observed. In this way the Christian feast of *Qaddus Yohannes*, St. John the Baptist, was superimposed on the ancient Hebraic structure; and though no great violence was done to the date (29 August) on which the Church commemorates the execution of St. John, it is clear that the ceremonies associated with this day in Ethiopia reveal a distinctly pre-Christian character.

The same applies to *Mäsqāl* (17 Mäskärām = 27 September) which is tied to New Year in much the same way as *roš haš-šana*

<sup>1</sup> See also Cheesman, *Lake Tana*, pp. 54-55.

<sup>2</sup> That is also Pollera's view (*L'Abissinie di ieri*, p. 156). Other Old Testament and Jewish elements have been pointed out by Ludolf, *Commentarius*, pp. 368 ff.



and *yom hak-kippurim* are connected by the period of expiation and atonement. There is, of course, no clear consciousness in Ethiopia of the original functions of each of these days, but the idea of purification and atonement is prominently present.<sup>1</sup>

Mäsqäl, the feast of the finding of the True Cross, appears to have received its Christian sanction at the end of the fourteenth century, but the pagan and Hebraic rites associated with it point to a more ancient and more complex origin. On the morning of Mäsqäl the celebration of the *Dāmāra* takes place. The *dāmāra* is a large heap of dry wood around which the people assemble and which is eventually set ablaze to the accompaniment of shouts, songs, dances, and ululations. Some say that it marks the ultimate act in the cancellation of sins, while others hold that the direction of the smoke and the final collapse of the heap indicate the course of future events—just as the cloud of smoke of the Lord over the Tabernacle offered guidance to the children of Israel (*Exod.* 40: 34–38).

Of particular interest in this connexion is a somewhat neglected treatise on the calendar whose redaction goes back to the reign of the Emperor Amda Seyon (fourteenth century). Its editor, P. Mauro da Leonessa,<sup>2</sup> has drawn attention to what he terms the 'ricorrenze giudaiche del calendario abissino' (pp. 304, 306). He shows that the feast of *māṣqā*<sup>3</sup> is 'propriamente il novilunio del settimo mese degli Ebrei' (*tiṣrī*), that the *bādr*<sup>4</sup> is 'precisamente il *yom kippur* ossia il digiuno della espiazione dei Giudei'. Other connexions relate to *māṣellāt* 'Tabernacles', *fāṣṣa* 'orit' 'Passover', etc.

The most ancient meaning of these feasts—as was also the case in Israel—was no doubt seasonal: the month of Mäskärām marked the end of the rains, the resumption of work, and the reopening of communications.

The Ethiopian Church has an enormous number of days of fasting,<sup>5</sup> but Ludolf (*Historia*, iii. 6, 90 ff.) had already observed—correctly, I believe—that the two regular weekly Abyssinian fasts are a remnant of the two days of fasting each week observed by Jews. The change from Monday and Thursday to Wednesday and Friday was no doubt meant to invalidate accusations of imitating the Jews.

If the Judaization of the Ethiopian Church and its veneration of the Old Testament were simply an aspect of the nature of all

<sup>1</sup> For Hebraic parallels cf. JSS 1956, p. 246.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Dillmann, *Lection*, col. 5215.

<sup>3</sup> Details in Rastgers, *op. cit.*, p. 34; *Fetha Negast*, chapter xv; Guidi *OM* 1908, p. 254.

<sup>4</sup> RSE 1945, iii, pp. 300–26.

<sup>5</sup> *Op. cit.*, col. 541.

the Christian Oriental Churches (as M. Rodinson has at times argued),<sup>1</sup> it would be hard to explain the wellnigh universally reported impression of the Hebrew or Biblical character of the Ethiopian ambience (see esp. above, pp. 26–30, 99, 102, note 3, etc.) and the absence of such virtually unanimous judgement in relation to the Jacobite, Coptic, and other Oriental Churches. It seems to me that this argument by itself is strong enough to uphold the general view that the Old Testament character of Ethiopian Christianity is a phenomenon *sui generis*.

I have no doubt that the parallels that have been drawn and the influences which have been sketched in this necessarily superficial examination may well be tentative and may require correction at various points, but in their cumulative effect they cannot fail to reveal a truly remarkable sediment of Hebraic lore settled in this remote outpost of the Semitic world. I have endeavoured to indicate no more than a few lines along which research might profitably be undertaken; and I have said nothing of many important facets, such as customary law, marriage, and divorce (in particular levirate marriage<sup>2</sup>—so obvious an Old Testament institution) or of the theological structure. Could it be that *tāwāḥdo*, the monophysite doctrine, has been so stubbornly and passionately defended in Ethiopia over the centuries because it was felt to accord more closely with the strict concepts of Old Testament monotheism? The all-pervading effect of Ethiopian Christianity on Ethiopian life will be clear to anyone who has grasped the identity of religious and secular life in a Semitic civilization.

#### EXCURSUS ON THE FALASHAS

The present examination cannot conclude without a few summary remarks on the Falashas who have for long been dubbed, with questionable justification, the 'Jews of Ethiopia'. In the present context we shall have to determine whether they can, in fact, be considered the carriers of those Old Testament and Hebraic elements discussed in the foregoing or if they are merely one sector of the population peculiarly exposed to the general impact.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> I find myself, however, in substantial agreement with most of the conclusions (p. 245) at which M. Rodinson has arrived in his exceptionally valuable and learned review-article in *Et Or*, 1964. Here he states that he does not deny 'la possibilité d'influences juives sur le christianisme éthiopien *spécifiquement*', speaks of 'l'imitation systématique de l'Ancien Testament', and affirms that 'l'expérience historique . . . nous apprend qu'une judaïsation de ce genre peut se faire sans aucune intervention des Juifs réels, par simple lecture des textes et raisonnement sur ceux-ci'.

<sup>2</sup> Deut. 25: 5–10.

<sup>3</sup> For a brief bibliographical orientation on the Falashas see Askochy, 'The Falashas



A good deal of legendary information about the Falashas appears already in such medieval writings as *Sefer Eldad* and in an account given by Benjamin of Tudela who gathered some news on the Falashas while on his way from the Yemen to Egypt.<sup>1</sup> Ludolf included some notes and questions in his monumental work on Ethiopian history—based, to a large extent, on information supplied by Abba Gregory who thought that the Falashas 'dialecto Talmudica corrupta inter se utuntur'<sup>2</sup> (no doubt a reference to their Agaw vernacular which Gregory did not understand). Thus misled, Ludolf is understandably curious to know 'quando vel qua occasione Judaei isti primum in Aethiopiā venerint? Karracorumne vel aliorum Judaeorum sectae sint addicti?'

James Bruce of Kinnaird<sup>3</sup> provides a fairly detailed, though not necessarily accurate, picture of Falasha life which became the stimulus of subsequent interest in this peculiar form of 'Judaism'. With the exception of such noted scholars as Guidi, Conti Rossini, Rathjens, Leisau, and a few others, nineteenth- and twentieth-century preoccupation with the Falashas has been marked by either Christian or Jewish missionary zeal<sup>4</sup> which has vitiated most attempts at a scholarly approach and has plunged Falasha 'studies' into an atmosphere charged with a surfeit of *ira et studium*. Earlier works, such as those by the Christian missionaries H. A. Stern,<sup>5</sup> J. M. Flad,<sup>6</sup> and others nevertheless possessed considerable intrinsic value, while the Alliance Israélite Universelle was uncommonly fortunate in the choice of J. Halévy, the famous Semitist, as its first emissary to the Falashas. Such good fortune cannot be said to have attended more recent excursions into Falasha country.

The Falashas, who live to the north of Lake Tana in Begamedr, Semien, and Dembiya, are Ethiopians of Agaw stock. They have survived in small nuclei representing a total number that has been variously estimated at between 15,000 and 60,000 (but which is almost certainly nearer the lower figure). Their cult embodies a curious mixture of pagan-Judaic-Christian beliefs and ceremonies, but the Falashas are neither the only non-Christian and unconverted tribe nor the only sector of the Ethiopian population that has clung to so strange a religious amalgam. The Falashas do not know of any religious prescriptions outside the Pentateuch; Mishnah and Talmud are unknown to

(bibliography) in *Kiryat Sefer*, xii, xiii (1937-7); Leisau in *Studies in Bibliography and Book-lore*, June 1957; Ascoly, *Sefer ha-Falashim*; idem, *Revue de Trésor Falasha*; Leisau, *Falasha Anthology*; idem, *Costumes et Coutumes des Falashas*; Ullendorff in *BSOAS* 1953, pp. 174-7; 1961, pp. 419-35.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Conti Rossini, 'Leggende Geogr. Giudaiche del IX secolo (il *Sefer Eldad*)'; idem, 'L'itinerario di Beniamino da Tudela e l'Etiopia'; Cerulli, *Etiopi in Palestina*, i, 234, 320.

<sup>2</sup> *Histoire*, i, 14, 42 ff. <sup>3</sup> *Travels*, ii, 396 ff.

<sup>4</sup> Most of the reports that have so far been made about the Falashas have been incomplete and characterized by a Christian or Jewish missionary tendency which appreciably diminishes their usefulness and objectivity (Leisau, *Falasha Anthology*, p. 2). See also Ascoly's strictures on the subject of Falasha 'research' in *Sefer ha-Falashim*, 176 ff.

<sup>5</sup> *Wanderings among the Falashas in Abyssinia*, London, 1868.

<sup>6</sup> *The Falashas of Abyssinia*, London, 1869; *60 Jahre in der Mission unter den Falashas*, Gießen, 1922.

them. They have no knowledge of Hebrew, and the language of their prayers is Ge'ez—as is the case with their Christian compatriots. The feasts mentioned in the Pentateuch are observed by the Falashas in a manner often materially different from that of Jews elsewhere. Post-exilic feasts are not celebrated by them. The Sabbath is observed with considerable strictness, and the prescriptions regarding ritual cleanness are practised with great zeal—both features which exist among very many other Ethiopians. In common with their monophysite neighbours the Falashas carry out circumcision on boys and excision on girls. Monasticism plays an important part in their community—and here, surely, is a fundamental distinction from Judaism. Their place of worship is significantly called *masgid*!

A dispassionate appraisal of the ethnic and religious position of the Falashas places them squarely into the main-stream of Ethiopian life, yet outside the doctrinal tradition of monophysitism. Study of the historical background makes it clear beyond reasonable doubt that the occasionally canvassed origin of the Falashas from the Jewish garrison of Elephantine<sup>1</sup> or the conjecture that Jewish influences in Abyssinia had penetrated by way of Egypt are devoid of any reliable historical basis. In the section dealing with the historical background (Introduction) I have endeavoured to muster some of the evidence in rebuttal of such views and in support of the now widely accepted proposition that such Judaized elements must have entered Ethiopia via South Arabia. There is no need to cover the same ground once more, for all the evidence available points to the conclusion that the Falashas are descendants of those elements in the Aksumite kingdom who resisted conversion to Christianity. Their so-called Judaism is merely the reflection of those Hebraic and Judaic practices and beliefs which were implanted on parts of south-west Arabia in the first post-Christian centuries and subsequently brought into Abyssinia. The general Ethiopian tendency towards the emulation of the world of the Old Testament had the effect of strengthening their adherence to these elements and of providing a quasi-doctrinal underpinning of this structure.

If this opinion is correct, then the religious pattern of the Falashas—even though it will have undergone some change in the past 1,600 years—may well mirror to a considerable extent the religious syncretism of the pre-Christian Aksumite kingdom. It is in their living testimony to the Judaized civilization of the South Arabian immigrants and their wellnigh complete cultural ascendancy over the Cushitic and other strata of the original African population of Ethiopia that we must seek the value and great interest of the Falashas today—and not in their rehabilitation as a long lost tribe of Israel (which is historically quite

<sup>1</sup> This view was resuscitated by so exalted an authority as the late President of Israel (Mr. Y. Ben-Zvi) in an important article on the early settlement of Jewish tribes in Arabia (*Israel Journal* (Jerusalem), vi (1960), 146) where the opinion is parenthetically expressed without any proof being adduced in its support—nor does Mr. Ben-Zvi appear to have seen the full documentation concerned with this question.



unwarranted). Like their Christian fellow Ethiopians, the Falashas are stubborn adherents to fossilized Hebraic-Jewish beliefs, practices, and customs which were transplanted from South Arabia into the Horn of Africa and which may here be studied in the authentic surroundings and atmosphere of a semitized country.

Falasha literature forms an integral part of the literary tradition of Ethiopia, both in its themes and in the manner of their treatment. There exist, however, a few works which are peculiar to the Falashas, but, despite the valiant spadework by Halévy, Conti Rossini, Acikoly, Leslau, Wurmbrand,<sup>1</sup> and a few others, this literature has not yet received the detailed scholarly examination it deserves, both for its own sake and for the detection of historical and literary ramifications. Among original Falasha works appear to be the 'Commandments of the Sabbath', the 'Book of Abba Elijah', and some of their prayers. Books which have received at least a measure of specific elaboration by the Falashas include the Apocalypses of Gorgorios and Ezra, the 'Book of Disciples', the 'Testament of Abraham',<sup>2</sup> the 'Book of the Angels', and one or two others of less certain provenance. All this literature is, of course, in Go'az; the Falashas are, it is worth reiterating, entirely innocent of Hebrew, and their Agaw vernacular is not employed for literary purposes.

A small Falasha work of some interest is the *Mota Muse* ('Death of Moses') or *Zena Muse* ('Story of Moses'), though one should not be too dogmatic about its exclusive connexion with the Falashas.<sup>3</sup> There exist Arabic, Hebrew, and other opuscula on this subject, and the literary filiation of this work is capable of shedding some light on the cultural and historical provenance of the Falashas. Close examination of this document has shown that the Falasha *Mota Muse* does not originate from a Jewish source nor does it contain anything of specifically Jewish character. On the contrary, its contents reveal that it is directly derived from Muslim sources which, in a remote past, may themselves have drawn on a Jewish legend that was subsequently reshaped in accordance with Arabic literary and national trends.

It would be hazardous to see in this more than just one facet of Falasha dependence on non-Jewish elements. On the other hand, it is both unscholarly and impolitic to stretch the evidence beyond permissible limits and place the Falashas against a background which is far removed from their genuine native ambience. Falashas and Ethiopians in general are the heirs of a civilization in which the veneration and imitation of the Old Testament occupy a central and enduring position.

<sup>1</sup> See Bibliography.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *The Falasha Version of the Testament of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob*, Manchester Ph.D. thesis submitted by M. Gaguine (1965).

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Fialkovitch, *Mota Muse*, Paris, 1906; Ullendorff, 'Death of Moses' in *BSOAS* 1961, pp. 419-43.

## EXCURSUS

## THE LINGUISTIC FACTORS

## Introductory

THE linguistic elements involved in our subject can be approached in a number of different ways. The most obvious group is, perhaps, represented by Hebrew words which have simply been transliterated or transcribed (generally the latter, but this remains to be established in detail) into Go'az. In MS. 5 in Zotenberg's *Catalogue*, p. 8 (Eth. 94) we find a list of Hebrew words with their explanation in Ethiopic:

አላሃ: ሳላ: ለምሳሌ: ለምሳሌ: ሳላ:  
እግረ: ሰላት: ሳላ: ከገላት: . . . , etc.

If I am not in error, the full list has never yet been subjected to systematic scrutiny. Words like ሳላ: 'Manna' (Exod. 16: 33, 35), ለምሳሌ: or ለዊሳሌ: 'Leviathan', etc., are, of course, merely transcriptions. Other examples have been mentioned on p. 42, above.<sup>4</sup> In a sense—as Nöldeke<sup>5</sup> had already observed—even words like ለላ: ገሳ: are originally transcriptions, but that applies to many loanwords until they are adapted to the phonetic system of the recipient language.

I shall not be concerned here with passages which deliberately employ such Ethiopic roots as correspond with their equivalents in the Hebrew original,<sup>6</sup> nor with Ethiopic expressions which are clearly intended as approximations to the Hebrew text.<sup>7</sup> Instead, I shall have two main objects in mind: (1) The Hebrew and particularly Aramaic loanwords in Go'az which reflect either the Judaic leaven in Abyssinian civilization or which are expressive of specifically Christian ideas; and (2) the value for the exegesis of the Hebrew Bible of the Ethiopian languages, ancient or modern. In this latter context I shall not be collecting etymological equivalents as such,<sup>8</sup> but shall only adduce those words which can be held to contribute to an elucidation of the text.

While my principal concern in this study will be with loanwords which have found a home in Ethiopic, there exists, of course, an export, by no means negligible, of Go'az words into other languages, notably Arabic. One need only think of

<sup>4</sup> See also Helder, *Aeth. Bibeldidaktik*, p. 9.

<sup>5</sup> *Neue Beiträge*, p. 33.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. p. 42, above, and Zotenberg, *Catalogue*, p. 9.

<sup>7</sup> Zotenberg, op. cit., p. 11; see also p. 43, above.

<sup>8</sup> That has already been done by W. Leslau, *Ethiopic and South Arabic Contributions to the Hebrew Lexicon*, University of California Press, 1938.



unwarranted). Like their Christian fellow Ethiopians, the Falashas are stubborn adherents to fossilized Hebraic-Jewish beliefs, practices, and customs which were transplanted from South Arabia into the Horn of Africa and which may here be studied in the authentic surroundings and atmosphere of a semitized country.

Falasha literature forms an integral part of the literary tradition of Ethiopia, both in its themes and in the manner of their treatment. There exist, however, a few works which are peculiar to the Falashas, but, despite the valiant spadework by Halévy, Conti Rossini, Ascoly, Leslau, Wurmbrand,<sup>1</sup> and a few others, this literature has not yet received the detailed scholarly examination it deserves, both for its own sake and for the detection of historical and literary ramifications. Among original Falasha works appear to be the 'Commandments of the Sabbath', the 'Book of Abba Elijah', and some of their prayers. Books which have received at least a measure of specific elaboration by the Falashas include the Apocalypses of Gorgorios and Ezra, the 'Book of Disciples', the 'Testament of Abraham',<sup>2</sup> the 'Book of the Angels', and one or two others of less certain provenance. All this literature is, of course, in Gə'əz; the Falashas are, it is worth reiterating, entirely innocent of Hebrew, and their Agaw vernacular is not employed for literary purposes.

A small Falasha work of some interest is the *Mota Muse* ('Death of Moses') or *Zena Muse* ('Story of Moses'), though one should not be too dogmatic about its exclusive connexion with the Falashas.<sup>3</sup> There exist Arabic, Hebrew, and other opuscula on this subject, and the literary fiction of this work is capable of shedding some light on the cultural and historical provenance of the Falashas. Close examination of this document has shown that the Falasha *Mota Muse* does not originate from a Jewish source nor does it contain anything of specifically Jewish character. On the contrary, its contents reveal that it is directly derived from Muslim sources which, in a remote past, may themselves have drawn on a Jewish legend that was subsequently reshaped in accordance with Arabic literary and national trends.

It would be hazardous to see in this more than just one facet of Falasha dependence on non-Jewish elements. On the other hand, it is both unscholarly and impolitic to stretch the evidence beyond permissible limits and place the Falashas against a background which is far removed from their genuine native ambience. Falashas and Ethiopians in general are the heirs of a civilization in which the veneration and imitation of the Old Testament occupy a central and enduring position.

<sup>1</sup> See Bibliography.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *The Falasha Version of the Testament of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob*, Manchester Ph.D. thesis submitted by M. Gaguine (1963).

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Faidlovitch, *Mota Muse*, Paris, 1906; Ullendorff, 'Death of Moses' in *BSOAS* 1961, pp. 419-43.

## EXCURSUS

### THE LINGUISTIC FACTORS

#### Introductory

THE linguistic elements involved in our subject can be approached in a number of different ways. The most obvious group is, perhaps, represented by Hebrew words which have simply been transliterated or transcribed (generally the latter, but this remains to be established in detail) into Gə'əz. In MS. 5 in Zotenberg's *Catalogue*, p. 8 (Éth. 94) we find a list of Hebrew words with their explanation in Ethiopic:

ለሰገ: ሰገል: ለጽላጽ: ለጽላጽ: ለጽላጽ:  
ለገላጽ: ሰገል: ሰገል: ሰገል: ሰገል: . . . , etc.

If I am not in error, the full list has never yet been subjected to systematic scrutiny. Words like ሰገል: 'Manna' (Exod. 16: 33, 35), ለጽላጽ: or ለጽላጽ: 'Leviathan', etc., are, of course, merely transcriptions. Other examples have been mentioned on p. 42, above.<sup>1</sup> In a sense—as Nöldeke<sup>2</sup> had already observed—even words like ሰገል: ገላጽ: are originally transcriptions, but that applies to many loanwords until they are adapted to the phonetic system of the recipient language.

I shall not be concerned here with passages which deliberately employ such Ethiopic roots as correspond with their equivalents in the Hebrew original,<sup>3</sup> nor with Ethiopic expressions which are clearly intended as approximations to the Hebrew text.<sup>4</sup> Instead, I shall have two main objects in mind: (1) The Hebrew and particularly Aramaic loanwords in Gə'əz which reflect either the Judaic leaven in Abyssinian civilization or which are expressive of specifically Christian ideas; and (2) the value for the exegesis of the Hebrew Bible of the Ethiopian languages, ancient or modern. In this latter context I shall not be collecting etymological equivalents as such,<sup>5</sup> but shall only adduce those words which can be held to contribute to an elucidation of the text.

While my principal concern in this study will be with loanwords which have found a home in Ethiopic, there exists, of course, an export, by no means negligible, of Gə'əz words into other languages, notably Arabic. One need only think of

<sup>1</sup> See also Heider, *Auth. Bibeldrucke*, p. 9.

<sup>2</sup> *Neue Beiträge*, p. 33.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. p. 42, above, and Zotenberg, *Catalogue*, p. 9.

<sup>4</sup> Zotenberg, *op. cit.*, p. 11; see also p. 43, above.

<sup>5</sup> That has already been done by W. Leslau, *Ethiopic and South Arabic Contributions to the Hebrew Lexicon*, University of California Press, 1958.







where, in fact, the Go'oz *māsuwātā* is used (thus also Coulbeaux-Schreiber's and da Bassano's dictionaries).

Ethiopic *ṣa'ot* 'idol' clearly shows its specifically Jewish connexion' (the post-Biblical *מזבז*). The Syriac form is *ṣā'ūtā* and means 'error'; the specialized significance 'idol' is not attested in Syriac and appears to be peculiar to Jewish Aramaic—and hence to Go'oz.

Similar considerations apply to *tabot*<sup>2</sup> which has been discussed in general terms in the main part of this chapter. Nöldeke (op. cit., 37) had already found that this word is 'nur jüdisch bezeugt'; and Polotsky has drawn attention (loc. cit.) to the fact that it 'exhibits characteristically different forms in Jewish Aramaic and Syriac, respectively': *ṭḥōṭā* (*ṭḥōṭā*) as compared with Syriac *qḥōṭā*; the latter is thus 'ruled out as the source of *tabot*'.

Nöldeke<sup>3</sup> and Guidi,<sup>4</sup> in particular, have argued that *haymanot* 'faith' is specifically Christian and Syriac.<sup>5</sup> Linguistically, the term is neutral and represents both Jewish Aramaic and Syriac *haymānūtā*; semantically, it is indeed more exclusively religious than is the case in Jewish Aramaic. Polotsky's detailed study of the scriptural occurrences of this word has shown that the argument in favour of a Christian-Syriac origin falls short of being conclusive.<sup>7</sup> Jewish Aramaic derivation has also been claimed by Dillmann<sup>8</sup> and Rahlfs.<sup>9</sup> Polotsky's verdict that *haymanot* 'belongs to the same group' as *ṣa'ot*, *tabot*, etc., and that its use in the Ethiopic Bible is 'actually easier to understand, if it was in the first instance borrowed as a Jewish word' carries conviction. The qualification in the first instance is, however, of crucial importance, for *haymanot* is one of several examples where the original borrowing from Jewish Aramaic sources was subsequently developed by Syriac and conducted into specifically Christian channels.

Ethiopic *arami*<sup>10</sup> 'pagan' reflects, in form, Hebrew *arami* rather than Syriac *armāyā*.<sup>11</sup> *Orīl* 'law, Torah' represents, of course, Jewish Aram. and Syriac *oreyṭā*; it is thus linguistically indeterminate. Nöldeke was undecided as to whether Jews or Christians introduced this term into Ethiopic,<sup>12</sup> but it seems to me that the considerations which have been put forward in the case of *haymanot* would apply *a fortiori* to *orīl*.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> So also Dillmann, *Lex.* xcii; Nöldeke, op. cit., p. 35; Polotsky, op. cit., p. 6.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Dillmann, *Lex.* xci and 56; Nöldeke, op. cit., pp. 37, 49; Polotsky, loc. cit.; and above, p. 8, where further references are cited in footnote 5.—I find it difficult to accept Rahlfs's verdict (*West-Arabian*, pp. 109-10) that Ethiopic must have received this word via West Arabian.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Mand. *qabala*, *qabala* (Drower and Macuch, *Mand. Dict.*, pp. 398, 405); Greek *ἐπίκλη*; see Brockelmann, *Lex. Syr.*, p. 645. I am uncertain whether the resemblance between *ṣṣṣṣ* and *ṣṣṣṣ* is fortuitous or is the result of a process of palatalization of the type described in Sem. *Langs. of Ethiopia*, p. 68, note 71.

<sup>4</sup> Op. cit., pp. 23 and 25. <sup>5</sup> *Storia della lett. et.*, p. 14. <sup>6</sup> See above, p. 40.

<sup>7</sup> Op. cit., pp. 6-7. <sup>8</sup> *Lexicon*, col. xcii. <sup>9</sup> *Alt. Bibelübersetzung*, p. 673.

<sup>10</sup> Cf. Dillmann, *Lexicon*, col. xcii; Nöldeke, op. cit., p. 35; Rahlfs, op. cit., p. 673.

<sup>11</sup> Cf. Nöldeke, *Syr. Gram.*, p. 86, note 1. I cannot agree here with Conti Rossini, *Storia*, p. 153, who postulates Syriac origin. I am not sure, however, if his use of 'Syriac' is intended to be precise and is not simply a (mistaken) blanket term for Aramaic in general.

<sup>12</sup> *Neue Beiträge*, p. 35. <sup>13</sup> Rahlfs, op. cit., p. 675.

*si'el* 'nether world' has not only its well-known Hebrew and Syriac counterparts but also Jewish Aram. *ṣṣṣṣ*; it is thus linguistically neutral and semantically indifferent. To the same range of meaning belongs *gāhammām* 'Gehenna', but here the retention of the final *m*—in contrast to Syriac *ḡam* and Greek *γῆεννα*—points to Jewish provenance.<sup>1</sup> The Arabic *ḡaym* is, of course, derived from Go'oz.<sup>2</sup>

I have already referred (p. 98, above) to *lārguamā* 'to interpret'; here the semantic area as well as the labio-velar sound (indicative of an original *targum*) testify to the Hebraic-Jewish origin of this concept. Go'oz *aṣṣṣṣ*, too, derives from the same ambience;<sup>3</sup> it is specifically applied 'de lustrationibus Judaeorum sacris' and does not occur in Syriac. In Go'oz *fash* 'Passover' the sibilant shows that the word came from Hebrew or Jewish Aramaic,<sup>4</sup> since in Syriac we encounter *f* instead of *s*.

*'arb* 'eve of Sabbath, Friday' is probably taken from Hebrew rather than from Aramaic or Syriac *'arubā*.<sup>5</sup> In *ḥanafi* (*ḥanafi*), on the other hand, the semantic development to 'pagan' in both Go'oz and Syriac (in contrast to Hebrew *ḥanef* 'hypocrite') makes borrowing from a Syriac source the more likely course. The term possesses, however, theological complexities and wide ramifications.<sup>6</sup>

In *māsiḥ* 'anointed' and *nabiḥ* 'prophet' it is impossible to assert that absence of the Aramaic ending necessarily suggests Hebrew provenance, for the Aramaic ending disappears not infrequently when rendered into another language.<sup>7</sup> Similarly inconclusive is *sānbāt* whose nasal sound is not attested either in Hebrew or any Aramaic dialect. Dillmann (*Lex.* xxi) includes *sayfan* among the words of Jewish provenance, and Nöldeke (op. cit., p. 34) lists it among the Hebrew and Aramaic words accepted into Ethiopic. While this view is probably correct, it is not at all easy to account for the phonetic development which has occurred in this case.

*qāsi* 'priest' seems, one would agree with Nöldeke (op. cit., p. 37), 'specifically Christian', both semantically and in form (despite the existence of *ṣṣṣṣ* it is almost certainly derived from Syriac). *ṣṣṣṣ* 'salvation', on the other hand, may have its source in either the Jewish Aramaic or Syriac equivalent.

Dillmann (*Lexicon*, xcii) is unduly restrictive in mentioning among *res Christianae* Greek borrowings only (e.g. *marfir*, *askema*, *sinodas*, etc.). We have already noted some Syriac words falling within this category and some others will follow presently. Among his *res sacrae* (*ibid.*)

<sup>1</sup> Rahlfs, *ibid.* <sup>2</sup> Cf. Nöldeke, op. cit., p. 34; Conti Rossini, *Storia*, p. 143.

<sup>3</sup> Nöldeke, op. cit., p. 47. <sup>4</sup> Nöldeke, op. cit., p. 36; Dillmann, *Lex.* xcii; Conti Rossini, *Storia*, p. 143.

<sup>5</sup> Dillmann, *Lex.*, p. 123. <sup>6</sup> Nöldeke, op. cit., p. 37; Conti Rossini, loc. cit.

<sup>7</sup> Agaput Conti Rossini, *Storia*, p. 155; Dillmann, *Lex.* xcii, 605.

<sup>8</sup> Nöldeke, op. cit., pp. 30, 35; Conti Rossini, *Storia*, p. 155; Dillmann, *Lex.* xcii, 605.

<sup>9</sup> *Expositio de fide*, iii, 185-6.

<sup>10</sup> Nöldeke, op. cit., p. 34.



Dillmann fails to include *ḥanot* 'tavern, shop' which, rather oddly, is listed among *res sacras*; dialectally, the word can be either Syriac or Jewish Aramaic.<sup>1</sup>

Go'az *ḥaṭ'a* does not usually have the meaning 'to sin' but rather 'to fail' in the widest sense. It would appear that the religious significance of *ḥaṭ'a* and the noun *ḥaṭ'at* is an Aramaic, but dialectally indistinct, calque.<sup>2</sup> *tākānsā* 'to congregate (in church)' is as likely to derive from a Hebrew source (on account of the sibilant *s*) as from a Syriac one (*s*).

*mālākot* 'divine rule' as well as 'divinity' is, again, not explicit as to its origin which may be either Hebrew (or Jewish Aramaic) or Syriac. *māl'ak* 'angel' reflects the Hebrew rather than the Syriac pronunciation, but the verb *l'k* 'to send' has remained active in Ethiopic. *tāsāqlā* is the usual word for 'to crucify' in Go'az, but Aramaic *tāṣāqlā* is attested as well. This is, of course, a specifically Christian term. Nöldeke had already shown<sup>3</sup> that this word is unlikely to have reached Ethiopic by way of Arabic (in view of *أُصْلِحَ* = *ṣalḥa*).

*ṣāllāyā* 'to pray' and *ṣālot* 'prayer' are neutral in terms of Aramaic dialectology. The same is true of *ṣom* 'fasting', *gāzārā* 'to circumcise',<sup>4</sup> *sāgādā* 'to prostrate oneself'.

In *q'urban* 'sacrifice, eucharist' the labio-velar might suggest Syriac (*qurbānā*) rather than Hebrew or Jewish Aramaic provenance. While *q'urban* has acquired specifically Christian overtones, it was also used to render the Old Testament notion of sacrifice (*qorban*). *qoba* 'priestly headgear' may go back to either a Hebrew or a Syriac source. *dārāsā*, *medras*, etc., have already been discussed on p. 97, note 5, above. *zāmān* 'time' in Go'az betrays its Jewish Aramaic origin, for the noun is *zbn* in Syriac (though the verb appears as *zmn*). Similar certainty can be postulated for Go'az *'asot* 'healing' which corresponds to Jewish Aramaic *asūfā*, while the Syriac form is *ayūfā*. *tābril* (or *tābril*) reflects Jewish Aramaic *tablil* (Syriac *būfālā*); one need only compare Genesis 25: 29. Forms like *tābril* and *tālmud* in Go'az had already been recognized by Brockelmann<sup>5</sup> as Aramaic and alien to Ethiopic.

This list could, of course, be expanded, but I do not think that further documentation would add anything either in substance or in statistical terms. Of the thirty-five words here considered fifteen are clearly of Jewish Aramaic origin, while sixteen are dialectally neutral. Only four are characteristically Syriac and distinctively Christian in meaning. This confirms Polotsky's view (JSS 1964) that the overwhelming number of such words are derived from Jewish Aramaic and belong to the pre-Christian Jewish leaven in Ethiopia. The Syriac-mediated loanwords must be ascribed to a later linguistic layer. The historical and

<sup>1</sup> See the interesting observations by Polotsky, JSS 1964, p. 8.  
<sup>2</sup> Cf. Nöldeke, op. cit., p. 96; Fractures, 'Beiträge zur äth. Gramma. und Etymologie' in *Beiträge zur Assyriologie*, I (1890), 29.  
<sup>3</sup> Nöldeke, op. cit., p. 31.  
<sup>4</sup> Cf. p. 108, note 2, above.  
<sup>5</sup> Brockelmann, l. c. 986; Nöldeke, op. cit., p. 45.

linguistic pieces of evidence thus combine to favour the assumption of two independent strands of Aramaic loanwords originating from different Aramaic dialects and different periods. It is likely that the later linguistic layer facilitated the absorption of the earlier Jewish Aramaic stock and afforded home rights to a Hebrew Aramaic tradition which became intimately blended with the Syriac and Christian superstratum.

The great majority of Aramaic loanwords thus belongs to the homogeneous group of Jewish notions introduced into Ethiopia by Judaized immigrants from south-west Arabia. The dialectal pattern conforms closely to cultural distribution: The Jewish Aramaic words, while predominantly of a religious type, also include some notions of a more general kind. The small Syriac minority, on the other hand, is confined to narrowly Christian religious terminology.

#### *The contribution of Ethiopic to Old Testament lexicography*

The object of this section is to illustrate, with the aid of a few representative examples, the contribution which the Ethiopian languages, and Go'az in particular, have to offer to the elucidation of the Hebrew vocabulary of the Bible.<sup>1</sup> The close connexion between Ethiopic and Hebrew had already been recognized in the seventeenth century by that remarkable linguist and Orientalist, Job Ludolf,<sup>2</sup> whose writings remain a mine of valuable information to this day. Thereafter, we only find the occasional reference to Ethiopic in Hebrew grammars and dictionaries. In 1825 the theologian, Hebraist, and Orientalist, H. Hupfeld, published his *Exercitationes Aethiopicae*, and other distinguished grammarians of Hebrew, among them Gesenius,<sup>3</sup> Ewald,<sup>4</sup> and König,<sup>5</sup> began to give attention to the claims of Ethiopic. The great August Dillmann also came to this discipline from theology and the Old Testament.<sup>6</sup>

The major dictionaries of Old Testament Hebrew have, of course, long included at least some Ethiopic and South Arabian material. And Dillmann's monumental *Lexicon Linguae Aethiopicae* contains a very large number of comparative Hebrew etymologies, many of which will not, however, withstand critical examination in the light of modern linguistic knowledge. Gesenius's *Handwörterbuch* to the Old Testament and Brown, Driver, Briggs's dictionary include ample and generally sound references to the South Semitic languages, but Koehler's *Lexicon* represents, in this and other respects, a retrograde step; incidentally,

<sup>1</sup> The substance of many of the following observations first appeared in my article in *Vet. Test.*, 1958, pp. 190-8.  
<sup>2</sup> Cf. J. Flemining in *Beiträge zur Assyriologie*, I (1890), II (1894).  
<sup>3</sup> *Hebräisches Elementarbuch*, later *Hebräische Grammatik*.  
<sup>4</sup> *Ausführliches Lehrbuch der hebräischen Sprache*.  
<sup>5</sup> *Neue Studien über Schrift, Aussprache, und allgemeine Formenlehre des Aethiopischen*.  
<sup>6</sup> Cf. the valuable biographical sketch of Dillmann by Erno Lüttmann, reprinted in the latter's *Ein Jahrhundert der Orientalistik*, Wiesbaden, 1933.



a large proportion of the Ethiopic words listed in it appear in oddly misspelt forms (a criticism which does not apply to Baumgartner's Aramaic part).<sup>1</sup>

Here are a few examples of the value that will accrue to Hebrew lexicography through closer examination of the Ethiopic languages:

The root *'dm* connotes in Hebrew, Arabic, Ugaritic, etc., 'to be red' or 'brown' or generally the colour of the human skin (so also in some of the Cushitic languages). In Ethiopic this root appears in this particular meaning only as an Arabic loanword *'adim* 'of red skin'; the usual word for 'red' is *qyh* in the Abyssinian languages. The meaning of the word *'dm* (and its derivatives) in Ethiopic is 'to be pleasant', 'to enjoy', 'voluptate afficere' (Dillmann, *Lexicon*, col. 800). There can be little doubt, in my view, of the semantic connexion between the colour 'red' and the notion 'pleasant, enjoyable, delightful'. Esau asks Jacob to give him *אדם* *q* (Gen. 25: 30), the 'sweet' or 'pleasant smelling', the 'delicious', the 'red stuff'. In *Song of Songs* 5: 10 we find: *דודי כח אדום* 'my beloved is white and ruddy'; and since *qyh* is 'milk-white', 'pure-white', *'adom* might well be 'pleasant', 'desirable' in this particular context. That 'red' was considered 'beautiful', 'pleasant', becomes also clear from the description of David in 1 Samuel 16: 12 *אדם צעיר ויפה* 'reddish with fine eyes and good looks'.

There exist quite a few well-attested instances of 'irregular' laryngeal and sibilant correspondences between Hebrew and South Semitic, but we cannot go into the details and causes of this phenomenon in the present context.<sup>2</sup> May it suffice here to mention such well-known roots as *š* 'to sow' in Hebrew, Arabic, Syriac (Ugaritic *š*),<sup>3</sup> but *ṣ* in Ethiopic and *ṣ* in South Arabian; Hebrew *egēl* 'young bull', 'young animal', but Ethiopic *ṣṣṣl*, etc. I mention this matter because I have not hitherto seen it pointed out that Hebrew *leḥem* 'bread', Arabic *laḥm* 'meat', etc., should be placed together with Ethiopic *laḥm* 'cow'. Thus the root *lhm* expressed in Semitic simply the staple-diet and would, therefore, vary in the different regions. In Ugaritic the verb *lhm* is 'to eat', and the noun may possibly signify nothing more definite than 'food' in general. In the South Arabian language of the island of Soqatra *leḥem* means 'fish' (shark).

Somewhat similar considerations apply to Hebrew *'aryeh* 'lion', for Akkadian *arū* is 'eagle', Arabic *ʿarū* 'mountain-goat'. In Gōʿāz *'arue* is a 'wild beast' or 'serpent'; in Tigre it is the usual word for 'snake'. Tāa *'arū* signifies any wild beast, but a 'leopard' in particular. There is

<sup>1</sup> I find myself in very reluctant, but almost complete, agreement with the general tenor of J. Reider's review of this dictionary in *JQR*, July 1955. See also V. Blau in *TARBIZ*, April 1956, and A. M. Honeyman in *Vet. Test.*, April 1955.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. M. Cohen, *Essai comparatif sur le vocabulaire et la phonétique du semito-araméen*, nos. 15 and 74.

<sup>3</sup> See, however, the present writer's *Sem. Langs. of Ethiopia*, p. 89.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Gordon, *Ugaritic Textbook*, §§ 5, 9 and 4.

<sup>5</sup> Leclau, *Levique Sogatri*, p. 232. Incidentally, I feel sure Leclau would now wish to reconsider what he said in *Eth. Contr. in Heb. Lex.*, p. 29.

no reason to think, as Koehler does, that *'aryeh* is an African loanword: the Ethiopic word for 'lion' is *'anbāsa*. Since the animal which we now call 'lion' was not indigenous in Palestine, we may, in fact, doubt whether *'aryeh* always and necessarily describes that particular animal; it might, perhaps, be the generic term for the principal wild and strong beast of the Palestinian fauna.

Already on a previous occasion<sup>1</sup> I had briefly invited attention to the connexion between Hebrew *pittah* 'to seduce' and Ethiopic *ṣāṭawā* 'to desire, love'. In Ugaritic, *ṣty* is attested in the probable meaning of 'to copulate'.<sup>2</sup> In Arabic *ṣty* is 'to be youthful'. We may thus suppose that the general Ethiopic idea of 'desire, love' is at the source of the semasiological development of this word.

Failure to distinguish between two different roots has led Koehler (and some of his predecessors) to describe Hebrew *ḥamor* 'ass' as the 'red animal'. But in post-Biblical Hebrew and in Aramaic *ḥmr* is 'to load, to carry'; *ḥemūr* is 'to render heavy, difficult'; *ḥamer* is the dry measure which is equivalent to the 'load of an ass'. In Ethiopic the word is not 'wanting', as Koehler asserts, but appears, as a variant of the basic connotation of 'loading', 'carrying', in the meaning of 'ship' (*ḥamār*).<sup>3</sup> Thus *ḥamor* is undoubtedly the beast of burden *par excellence* and derived from the root *ḥmr* which is connected with *ḥml* (by an exchange of final liquids) possessing a similar range of meaning in the Hebrew *ḥamor* 'ass' and the Ethiopic *ḥamār* 'ship' which resides in the general Semitic *ḥmr* 'to carry, to load'; and we also get rid of the fanciful explanation of the donkey as the 'red animal'.

Ludolf, in the seventeenth century, had already collected a number of Hebrew words which, in his opinion, could best be explained by having recourse to Ethiopic.<sup>4</sup> From this list I shall now choose one or two examples and offer certain amplifications.

Hebrew and Aramaic *'mr* 'to say'; Arabic and ESA 'to command'; Akkadian *amāru* 'to see' (thus also in Ugaritic); Gōʿāz 'to show'; Tigre 'to know, to be clear'. Original meaning: 'to be clear, bright'; hence 'to make clear', etc. The passage in Deuteronomy 26: 17, 18 has not been properly understood (cf. dictionaries and commentaries): *תָּאֵן* corresponds here precisely to Gōʿāz *āṣawā* 'to recognize': 'Thou hast recognized (תָּאֵן) the Lord this day to be thy God . . . and the Lord hath recognized thee this day to be his peculiar people . . .'

It is interesting to note that Hebrew *ḥemām* 'animal' is related, semantically, to Ethiopic *ḥemām* 'to be mute' in much the same way as 'brute' (beast) is to *brutus*.

<sup>1</sup> In a paper read to the 33rd International Congress of Orientalists, Cambridge, 1934, and published in *Africa*, 1935, p. 138.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. also Tigre *ṣtyt* (Munzinger, *Vocabulaire*, vol. 30; Littmann-Hofner, *Tigre-Wörterbuch*, p. 666) 'prostitute'.

<sup>3</sup> For the meanings of 'donkey' and 'part of a ship' in Akkadian see Delitzsch, *Assyrisches Handwörterbuch*, pp. 91-92; Benold, *Glossar*, p. 45.

<sup>4</sup> *Commentarius*, pp. 203-7.



The *hapax legomenon* in Amos 7: 14 בלם שקמים (Amos explaining that he was not a prophet, nor a prophet's son—but a herdman and . . .) is best elucidated by recourse to Ethiopic *bālās* 'fig', i.e. a 'cultivator of figs'. The Hebrew expression would thus be parallel—as Ludolf (loc. cit.) has pointed out—to *korem vis-à-vis kereem*.

קָבַץ is a word which occurs only twice in the Old Testament. Its meaning, in for instance Isaiah 30: 14, is usually guessed from the context: קָבַץ מִן הַיָּם וּמִן הַיַּבֵּשׁ 'to drain water out of the pit', 'out of the cistern'. In the Ethiopian languages and in South Arabian the root *gb* is frequent and well known; it means 'to collect'. It corresponds, in fact, exactly to the Hebrew *qubh* which is used for the 'gathering' of the water in Genesis 1: 9; thus קָבַץ closely resembles קָבַח.

Or Hebrew כָּלָם 'of two kinds', which is attested also in other North Semitic languages, appears in the form *kal'e* as the numeral 'two' in Ethiopic.

Professor D. Winton Thomas has shown<sup>1</sup> that Hebrew *mkr* does not always mean 'to sell'. A particularly instructive instance of the uses of this root was discovered by Ludolf in the famous crux in Genesis 49: 5: מְכַרְתֶּם אֶת אֶחָיו וְאֶת אֶחָיו אֶתְּמַרְתֶּם, though commentators do not seem to have paid attention to his interpretation, and Koehler still lists this word (מְכַרְתֶּם) as 'unexplained'. In Ethiopic *mkr* is 'to counsel'—a word of frequent occurrence—and our verse can thus be rendered: 'Simeon and Levi are brothers; strong weapons are their counsels'.

In 1 Samuel 19: 20 we hear that Saul sent messengers to take David and that they saw לְחֵץ וְנֶבֶשׁ which is commonly rendered as 'the company of the prophets'. לְחֵץ is a *hapax legomenon* and is usually explained as a metathesis of חֶלֶץ, but the root *lhq* is well attested in Ethiopic where it means 'to be old, senior'.<sup>2</sup> The noun *liq* (contracted from *lhiq*) connotes 'senior, princeps' and occurs principally in such expressions as *liqā mālā'akt* 'archangel', *liqā kahaat* 'high priest', etc. There seems to me little doubt, therefore, that לְחֵץ is not a metathesis of חֶלֶץ and does not refer to an 'assembly of prophets', but rather to the 'senior ones among the prophets'.<sup>3</sup>

Hebrew *rk* generally means 'to ride', and that meaning is, of course, also found in Akkadian, Ugaritic, and elsewhere. In Ethiopic *rk* is 'to find, come upon, get hold of'. Now, in post-Biblical Hebrew and also in Aramaic, *rk* (especially in the *hif'il* as *hirkil*) means 'to graft upon, to join, to connect'. The link between the meaning variants in these two phases of Hebrew may well be seen in the South Semitic connotation of 'to come upon, gather, collect'. In the Ugaritic hymns *rk* 'rpt' (parallel to the expression *rk* *rk* *rk* in Psalm 68: 5) should probably be

<sup>1</sup> JTS 1936 and 1937.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Arabic *liq* 'to be snow-white'.

<sup>3</sup> So already well explained by Ludolf (Ludolf, 1699, col. 633) as 'senatus prophetarum'. It was only after these observations had been committed to paper that I noticed that the same suggestion had already been made by Professor G. R. Driver in the JTS xxx (1927), 394, in an article which contains also other important remarks on the value of the South Semitic vocabulary for Hebrew lexicography.

compared to the Homeric *νεφέληγερέτης*, 'the cloud-gatherer'.<sup>4</sup> The connexion between 'to gather, to join' and 'to ride' is, of course, to be found in the action of harnessing (best expressed in the Greek *ζεύγνυμι*); and Dillmann was probably right when he voiced the opinion that 'potestas radicis prima in . . . componendo esse videtur' (Lexicon, col. 302).

The root *mhr* in Hebrew appears to connote 'haste, hurry', while the verb *mhr* in Ethiopic means 'to teach' and in the reflexive stem 'to learn'. It is probable that the basic meaning of this Semitic word is 'to be skilled' which, of course, implies both an element of speed (Hebrew) as well as of knowledge (Ethiopic). It is, indeed, well known that the Hebrew adjective *mahir* (which occurs four times in the Old Testament) means 'practised, expert, skilled', and it is time the dictionaries dispensed with the rendering 'quick'. מְהֵרָה מְהֵרָה (Prov. 22: 29) is, of course, a 'man skilled in his work', 'trained' but not necessarily 'quick'. And when Ezra is described as מְהֵרָה מְהֵרָה it is his 'knowledge' that is stressed and not his 'speed'. Arabic *mhr* and Syriac *māhīrā*, too, convey 'skill' and 'knowledge'. In South Arabian the element *mhr* occurs in some proper names which again would suggest, in that context, 'skill' and 'expertness' rather than 'haste'. It is interesting to compare the curiously parallel development in the root *lmd* which in Hebrew means 'to learn' and in Ethiopic 'to be accustomed', almost exactly the opposite semantic distribution. Of course, in expressions such as מְהֵרָה מְהֵרָה (Jer. 13: 23) 'accustomed to do evil' the basic root meaning appears also in Hebrew.

In Joel 1: 20 and especially in the well-known verse 2 in Psalm 42 we hear that the soul 'yearns' for God as the deer 'yearns' for the water brooks. The Hebrew verb used here is *rg* for which Arabic and particularly Ethiopic *rg* should be compared. In the latter two the well-attested meaning is 'to ascend', while Hebrew 'to yearn' is presumably a contextual, though fairly ancient, guess. It seems to me very likely that Psalm 42: 2 should be rendered: 'As the deer goes up to the water brooks, so my soul rises to thee, O God.'

Dillmann<sup>5</sup> had already drawn attention to the fact that Hebrew and Ethiopic share a fairly large number of important words which either do not appear in Arabic at all or in very different meanings. Among these may be mentioned:

לָקַח:	שָׁחַ	לָקַח:	שָׁחַ
שָׁחַ:	שָׁחַ	שָׁחַ:	שָׁחַ
לָקַח:	שָׁחַ	שָׁחַ:	שָׁחַ
שָׁחַ:	שָׁחַ	שָׁחַ:	שָׁחַ

I have considered the possibility that the contribution of Ethiopic to Hebrew lexicography may conceivably affect some areas of the

<sup>4</sup> Cf. my note in *Orientalia*, 1931, p. 278, note 8.

<sup>5</sup> *Ethiopic Grammar* (Cricketon transl.), pp. 8-7.



vocabulary more than others, but I have been unable to identify any such special spheres.

At first sight it might, perhaps, appear odd that the South Semitic languages<sup>1</sup> should be in a position to make a notable contribution to the elucidation of the Hebrew vocabulary. But such doubts are scarcely well founded, for we frequently encounter astonishing resemblances between geographically widely separated language groups. C. Rabin has collected a list of some twenty-eight instances of words common to the Yemenite or 'Himyaritic' dialect and to North-west Semitic, especially Hebrew.<sup>2</sup> The habitat of the Semitic peoples as it appears in historical times may well effectively disguise true genetic connexions, and later geographical distribution offers scant indication of special affinities and relationships which may originally have existed. Moreover, it frequently happens that one language has preserved a word or a meaning-variant which was accidentally lost from another.

To the language of the Old Testament the tongues of Abyssinia can, perhaps, contribute some matters of detail only, but to an understanding of the life and spirit of the Old Testament the country and people of Ethiopia can offer much of their own life and spirit.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the list of South Arabian correspondences in *Vol. Test.*, 1956, pp. 196 ff.  
<sup>2</sup> *Ancient West-Arabian*, pp. 26-28.

## III

THE QUEEN OF SHEBA<sup>1</sup>

THE notion of sacral kingship in Ethiopia can only be briefly referred to in the present context, for its detailed treatment would go beyond the framework of this treatise and would also lie outside the competence of the present writer. Moreover, we possess at least three recent studies of exceptional value, based on differing areas of evidence and reaching partially conflicting conclusions: Conti Rossini's 'la regalità sacra in Abissinia' and Caquot's 'la royauté sacrée en Éthiopie' both proceed from similar premises, i.e. the Semitic civilizations of the ancient orient, while Haberland's important *Untersuchungen zum äthiopischen Königtum* are essentially the work of an ethnographer who sees in Ethiopian kingship an aspect of the general African 'Königskultur' (op. cit., p. 9), though not denying the importance of its Christian and Old Testament roots.

In this context it is important that any future study of Ethiopian kingship should examine not only the literary documents, such as the *Kebra Nagast* and *Fatḥa Nagast*, the royal chronicles, the Aksum inscriptions, the *be'slā nāgāst*<sup>2</sup> or *sr'alā māngast*,<sup>3</sup> etc., as well as the original *Sitz im Leben* of this central institution of kingship,<sup>4</sup> but it is also essential to undertake a meticulous investigation of the terminology. This must involve such basic concepts as *ngusā nāgāst* or *janhag*<sup>5</sup> or the nomenclature of the Ethiopian Constitution of 1955.<sup>6</sup> Here one might compare, for instance, the ቅዱስ ሥልጣን in Article 4 with the

<sup>1</sup> The substance of this chapter was first published in the *Bulletin of the John Rylands Library*, vol. xlv, March 1965. I am grateful to Mr. Ronald Hall, the Librarian of that magnificent storehouse of Oriental treasures, for permission to reprint that paper with some minor changes. I should like to take this opportunity of expressing my appreciation to Mr. Hall and Dr. Taylor of the John Rylands Library for their unflinching courtesy and helpfulness. I hope soon to be able to resume cataloguing the library's fine collection of Ethiopic manuscripts.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. I. Guidi 'Il Be'slā Nagast' in *Festschrift Paul Haupt*, Leipzig, 1906; G. Conti Rossini in *RAAL* 1922.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. I. Guidi in *RAAL* 1922, Varenbergh, 24 1913.

<sup>4</sup> Reference should also be made to A. R. Johnson's *Sacred Kingship in Ancient Egypt* and J. Ryckmans's *L'Institution monarchique en Arabie méridionale*. I am greatly indebted to Professor Johnson for his kindness in sending me an early copy of the second edition of his work which traverses an area of which I am woefully ignorant.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Mitwoch, 'Decharhol — die amh. Bezeichnung für "Majestät"', 24 1911.

<sup>6</sup> *Revised Constitution of Ethiopia*, Addis Ababa, 1955.







we have to seek the queen's home in South-west Arabia or in the horn of Africa (the reference to rich forests [vv. 11 and 12] might possibly favour the latter assumption), for the connexions between the two shores of the southern Red Sea have at all times been close.<sup>1</sup>

Again, queens have been attested among the ancient Arabs, and we have therefore no reason to suspect the genuineness of the Biblical tradition. Cuneiform records enumerate many North Arabian queens,<sup>2</sup> but to assert that there was none in the south would merely be an *argumentum e silentio*. No South Arabian inscriptions have hitherto been discovered which either refer to this queen or indeed to any Sabaeen ruler earlier than about 800 B.C. By the time our records begin to flow, a century and a half after King Solomon's meeting with the Queen of Sheba, the Sabaeans have Mukarribs, i.e. priest-kings. Meanwhile, however, we have no reason to doubt the historical reality of the Queen of Sheba, and the day may come when archaeological or epigraphic finds confirm her existence—as has indeed happened to many other Biblical stories. At Marib in South Arabia the remains of the splendid circular *Makram Bilqis*, the Sanctuary of Bilqis (the Arabic name of the Queen of Sheba), bear witness to the popularity of the queen, even though she herself has no historical connexion with this ancient temple.

References, real or alleged, to the Queen of Sheba in the New Testament and in the Apocryphal Acts of the Apostles have already been discussed above (pp. 9-13), where we saw some aspects of the network of conflation. The confusion of the Queen of Sheba legend with the New Testament story of Candace was not, however, a deliberate forgery on the part of the Abyssinians but was part of the ancient blending of Candace-Sheba and Solomon-Alexander stories. The Syriac and Ethiopic versions of the Alexander romance<sup>3</sup> contain an account of the meeting of Alexander and Queen Candace which is, in some of its features, reminiscent of the encounter between Solomon and the Queen of Sheba.

Alvares reports<sup>4</sup> how Ethiopians believe that 'in this town of

<sup>1</sup> E. Ullendorff, *The Ethiopians*, pp. 47-57.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Fritchard, *ANET*, p. 285. If *Warran*, the Sabaeen, is mentioned by Sargon (*ANET*, pp. 285-6).

<sup>3</sup> See especially p. 117 of Budge's edition of the Ethiopic version of the *Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great*, vol. 1.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Rockingham and Huntingford, *The Prester John of the Indies*, I, 148 ff. Ludolf (*Historia Aethiopica*, book II, chap. 4, and book III, chap. 8) was the first scholar, if I am not mistaken, to attack in vigorous terms the fact that '... Aethiopia nonnulli [Reginam Candacem] pro sua agnoscunt'.

Aksum was the principal residence of Queen Candace'. The ancient Abyssinian capital Aksum became the repository of the Hebraic traditions and the seat of the Ark of the Covenant (which Menelik I, the son of King Solomon and the Queen of Sheba—according to the Ethiopian legend—is said to have removed from Jerusalem); but Aksum was also the capital of the Christian Queen Candace. Ethiopians are not conscious of any dichotomy here, for the complete blending of Jewish and Christian traditions into one indissoluble whole is one of the most remarkable features of the syncretistic Abyssinian civilization.

Josephus<sup>1</sup> gives us a slightly expanded and somewhat 'smartened up' version of the Old Testament story; yet he remains essentially faithful to the Biblical narrative and is entirely innocent of those accretions which later on attached themselves to the queen and her meeting with Solomon. The way in which he tells the story no doubt reflected the state of contemporary interpretation, and it is in this light that we shall have to see his interesting reference to Sheba as 'the Queen of Egypt and Ethiopia'. Even though this is probably intended to cover Nubia-Meroe rather than Abyssinia proper, it does show a concentration on an African, instead of Arabian, origin.

The Talmud contains, strangely enough, only one solitary reference to the Queen of Sheba, but one which is of some significance. The subject of discussion is the date of Job, and Rabbi Nathan declares, on the basis of Job 1: 15, that Job lived in the days of Sheba.<sup>2</sup> This causes Rabbi Jonathan to assert that Sheba was not a woman but a kingdom.<sup>3</sup> The difference can only be understood by reference to the defective spelling of Hebrew. It is virtually certain that this strange dictum is meant to apply not only to the one verse in Job 1 but is intended to reveal a general truth.<sup>4</sup> If we look at the Targum's rendering of

<sup>1</sup> *Antiquities*, viii, 6, 9-6.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>3</sup> *אין ששאל בר נשמי ארץ תתן כל הארץ מלכות שבה ויהיה ארץ אלא שנתה מלכות שבה מלכות דשבה.*

<sup>4</sup> So also G. Salzberger, *Die Salomo-Sage in der semitischen Literatur* (Berlin, 1907), p. 14. I cannot in this case agree with the arguments adduced by Hubbard, *op. cit.*, p. 287. It seems to me obvious that the Rabbis were aware (as the Targum to Job 1: 15 proves) of the strange tales about the relationship between Solomon and Sheba and set out to discredit them (cf. also Rösch, *Jahrbuch f. Prot. Theol.*, 1880, pp. 547-8). The *Mishnah Hagadol* (ed. Schechter, p. 379) states:

*אל תקרא מלכות שבה אלא מלכות שבה, שבה כל מלכות שבה בימי שלמה לשמש את ישראל.*

For some further details see my article 'The Biblical sources of the Ethiopian national saga' (in Hebrew) in *Sifur Tiv-Sinai*, Jerusalem, 1960.



Job 1: 15, we find that the seemingly innocuous שְׁבָא 'Sheba' of the Hebrew original is translated 'and suddenly Lilith, the Queen of Smaragd, fell upon . . .'. Here then we possess two early indications of the Queen of Sheba's role as temptress, although detailed literary reflections of this legend appear only somewhat later. While there can thus be little doubt that the visit of the Queen of Sheba excited imagination and experienced early Jewish Midrashic exposition, the first attested full-blown version of the Sheba legend is embodied in Islamic sources. When Jews migrated to Arabia, in the early years of the Christian era, they brought with them stories and Midrashim which formed part of their oral tradition and which subsequently penetrated Islam in Arabia and monophysite Christianity in Abyssinia, where these legends received specific Arabian and Ethiopian elaborations and embellishments. It is difficult to decide, however, whether later Midrashic accounts (such as the *Targum sheni* to Esther or the *Alphabet of Ben Sira*—to which I shall return presently) are derived from Arabic sources or are, in fact, remnants from early Midrashic collections which have been lost.

Before I deal with these later aspects of Jewish literature, I must trace the fate of the Queen of Sheba in Islamic documents which chronologically precede those late Midrashic developments.

The Sheba story in the Qur'an (Sūrah xxvii, 15-45) reflects some of the principal elements of the fully developed legend.<sup>1</sup> It describes the sun-worship of the queen, how a hoopoe (*hud-hud*) carries a letter to her from Solomon, the queen's consultation with her nobles, and the dispatch of presents to Solomon. When these are not well received by the king, the Queen of Sheba comes herself and, by a ruse (mistaking the polished floor for a pool of water), is made to uncover her legs. Eventually she surrenders (together with Solomon) to Allah, i.e. she becomes a Muslim.

This Qur'anic account closely resembles the fuller version in the later *Targum Sheni* to Esther—except that the Qur'an makes no mention of the reason for the polished floor which is meant to discover whether the queen has hairy legs. Neither the Qur'an nor the *Targum Sheni* refers to the queen's marriage to Solomon or even to any tender relations between them. Also the queen's Arabic name Bilqis does not yet appear in the Qur'an.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the entry *Bilqis* in the *Encyclopaedia of Islam* (new ed.). See also G. Weil, *Historische Legenden der Islamwelt*, Frankfurt, 1845, pp. 227-79.

Muslim commentators and writers<sup>1</sup> supplement the story at various points: the queen's name is given as Bilqis; the demons at Solomon's Court, afraid that the king may marry Bilqis, spread the rumour that the queen has hairy legs and the foot of an ass. Hence Solomon's stratagem of constructing a glass floor which the queen mistakes for water, thus causing her to lift her skirts. Solomon then commands his demons to prepare a special depilatory to remove the disfiguring hair. According to some, he then married the queen, while other traditions assert that he gave her in marriage to one of the Tubba's of the tribe of Hamdān.

This picture represents a conglomerate from various Arabic accounts.<sup>2</sup> One of the most convenient versions, comprehensive in its coverage of the more important motifs of the Arabic legend, is that by the early eleventh-century Arabic author at-Ta'labi and contained in his *qisas al-'anbiya* 'stories of the Prophets'.<sup>3</sup> Although Islamic sources have preserved the earliest literary reflexion of the complete Bilqis legend, we still maintain that the principal elements of the narrative are derived from Jewish traditions. This judgement is based not only on intrinsic probability and our knowledge of the general influence of the Midrashic genre on early Islam, but it is also supported by the following considerations: (1) the story in the Qur'an represents a curiously abrupt version which clearly presupposes prior development; (2) the Talmudic insistence<sup>4</sup> that it was not a woman but a kingdom of Sheba (based on varying interpretations of Hebrew *mlkt*) that came to Jerusalem makes sense only on the assumption that a highly discreditable version of the Solomon-Sheba story was known to the Rabbis; (3) the Ethiopic loan-word *ṣarḥ*<sup>5</sup> in Sūrah xxvii, 44 suggests that the Arabic legend was most probably drawn from some foreign prototype; (4) Bilqis, the Arabic name of the Queen of Sheba, is almost certainly connected with the Hebrew (though non-Semitic) שְׁבָא (cf. Greek *σαββαίς*) which would point to the area from which the basic features of the tale originated. I shall return later on to the subject of the queen's names.

<sup>1</sup> Especially Tabari, *Zamakhshari*, Baydāwī.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Hamdānī, *Idid*, 5th book, ed. N. A. Faris, Princeton, 1940, p. 24. Rosenthal's translation of Ibn Khaldūn's *Al-muqaddimah*, II, 259; for more detailed references to at-Ta'labi, *Ḥin al-Aḡr*, Ibn Khaldūn, etc., see Rüsch, *op. cit.*, pp. 506-7. Baydāwī's commentary to the relevant portions of Sūrah xxvii is concise but embodies most of the important elements of the Sheba cycle.

<sup>3</sup> Printed in A. Socin's *Arabic Grammar*, pp. 49-71. See also M. Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge zur semitischen Sagendekunde*, pp. 216-20.

<sup>4</sup> *Bebe Bera*, 15, b.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Nöldeke, *Neue Beiträge zur Sem. Sprachwissenschaft*, p. 31.



Arab authors deal also with other features of the Sheba cycle: there is considerable speculation as well as a fair measure of conflicting evidence as to the identity of the queen's father;<sup>1</sup> her mother's person is equally shrouded in mystery (was she some spirit [jinn], demon, serpent, or other animal?).<sup>2</sup> After her father's death, Bilqis is said to have succeeded him as queen. Her reign was, however, challenged by one of her subjects whom she removed by a ruse.<sup>3</sup> The description of Bilqis as Solomon's wife<sup>4</sup> is fairly widespread among Arab writers, and so is the motif of the birth of a son to the queen.

Chronology now takes us back to Jewish sources, and here it is Midrashic material to which we have to turn. The early Midrashim refer to the Queen of Sheba only in the most conventional terms, and if they were aware of any scandal attaching to her relations with King Solomon, they were certainly most assiduous in suppressing all mention of it. The most important Jewish source is the *Targum Sheni* ('the second Targum') to the book of Esther.<sup>5</sup> Its date is uncertain and is variously thought to range between A.D. 500 and 1000. The gist of this version is as follows:

Solomon was in the habit of summoning all the beasts, birds, reptiles, and spirits<sup>6</sup> to perform in front of him and his fellow kings from neighbouring countries. They all came of their own accord. On one occasion the hoopoe<sup>7</sup> was missing; when finally it was found, it reported to the king that it had been in search of a country anywhere in the world that might not be subject to the authority of Solomon. Eventually the hoopoe had found the city of Qitor in the East, full of gold and silver, and trees watered from the Garden of Eden; its ruler was the Queen of Sheba. Solomon then commanded his scribes to tie a letter to the hoopoe's wing which it delivered to the queen. This missive contained a somewhat peremptory invitation to present herself before the king. The queen thought it prudent to comply and arrived accompanied by vast quantities of precious gifts. Meanwhile, Solomon sat in a house of glass<sup>8</sup> to receive her; Sheba thought the king was sitting in water and, as she crossed the floor, she lifted her cloak<sup>9</sup> and thus revealed her hairy legs.

<sup>1</sup> Rāsch, op. cit., pp. 528-34.

<sup>2</sup> Tā'alabī (ed. Socin), pp. 54-55.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. also Grünbaum, op. cit., pp. 209 ff.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. also Grünbaum, op. cit., pp. 209 ff.

<sup>5</sup> שני תרגום ואלהן.

<sup>6</sup> זלזלית וזלזלית.

<sup>7</sup> תרגום ברא.

<sup>8</sup> בית החרוץ.

Whereupon the king remarked, somewhat unchivalrously: 'Thy beauty is the beauty of women, but thy hair is the hair of man; while hair is an ornament to a man, it is a disfigurement to a woman.'<sup>1</sup> The queen, as befits a lady, seems to have pretended not to have heard and, instead, proceeded to recite her riddles and questions.

Here, then, we have most of the essential ingredients of the non-Ethiopian Sheba legend. Two important elements are, however, still missing: (1) a mention of the queen's name; and (2) a reference to either marriage or concubinage between Solomon and Sheba. The first Jewish document in which the nature of these relations is expressly, rather than covertly, stated appears to be the eleventh-century *Alphabet of Ben Sira* in which Nebuchadnezzar is described as a son of King Solomon and the Queen of Sheba.<sup>2</sup> The union of king and queen occurred as soon as the depilatory had removed the disfiguring hair.

We have now pieced together most of the principal elements which make up the Sheba legend as it appears outside Abyssinia.

In turning to the Ethiopian version, we become at once conscious of a fundamental change of atmosphere: the emphasis is no longer on Solomon and his wisdom but on the Queen of Sheba and her nobility; no longer is Solomon exposed to the wiles of the seductress, Lilith, the earthy demon, but he himself assumes the role of seducer and, by a ruse, takes the virgin queen who—and this is the culmination and purpose of the entire Ethiopian saga—gives birth to a son, Menelik,<sup>3</sup> the founder of the Ethiopian dynasty. From him are descended all the kings of Ethiopia down to the present day, to Haile Sellassie—as is embodied in Article 2 of the 1935 Ethiopian Constitution ('the Imperial dignity shall remain perpetually attached to the line . . . [which] descends without interruption from the dynasty of . . . Menelik I, son of the Queen of Ethiopia, the Queen of Sheba, and King Solomon of Jerusalem'). Here, in the cold terms of legal phraseology, we find the continued insistence on the

<sup>1</sup> שו"ת שו"ת דודי וסודי סודי דבורא וסודי לעברא סודי ולאחורא נא.

<sup>2</sup> See also n. 2, p. 133. *Alphabet of Ben Sira*, ed. M. Steinschneider, Berlin, 1892, fol. 214.

<sup>3</sup> כשנא . . . מלכת שבא אל שלמה והביאה לו דורון לראות חכמתו ושרת בעניו ונקט לשב פמה ומנא כלה סודי חביא סודי חרוד . . . תא עליה באותה שעה.

<sup>4</sup> Possibly corrupted from *أبن الحكيم* (cf. Praetorius, *Fabula de regina Sabae apud Aethiopes*, Halle, 1870, p. viii) or *أبن الملك* (cf. also Surdeyn's attractive Polish book which embodies fragments from the *Kebra Nagast* [*Kebra Nagast* by Chosroë Aklilu Aklilu, Warsaw, 1955]).



*mystique* of a direct descent from King Solomon and the Queen of Sheba, a powerful reminder of the enduring efficacy of the Old Testament story and its wide ramifications.

Apart from this totally different atmosphere, the Ethiopian *Kebra Nagast* (which contains the Sheba cycle in chapters 21 ff.) exhibits other significant changes of detail: nothing is said about the queen's hairy limbs, nothing about the glass floor, or Sheba's descent from demons. The tale of the hoopoe is replaced by the realistic story of Tamrin, the head of Sheba's caravans, who is engaged in large-scale trading operations with Solomon and is impressed with the king's wisdom and might. On his return to his own country he reports to the queen in such enthusiastic terms that she decides to go and see for herself. The following chapters in the *Kebra Nagast* do not deviate substantially from the Biblical account but simply supply many details on which the concise story in the Old Testament is silent. One of the more important embellishments is the queen's decision to abandon the worship of the sun and to worship, instead, the Creator of the sun, the God of Israel (chapter 28).

The centre-piece and, at the same time, the original contribution of the Ethiopian version lie in the events leading up to the birth of Menelik: when Solomon gave a banquet in the queen's honour he had the meat specially seasoned. At the end of the evening the king invited the queen to spend the night in his chambers. The queen agreed on condition that Solomon swore to her that he would not take her by force. The king complied with this request—provided Sheba promised not to take anything in the king's house. Solomon then mounted his bed on one side of the chamber and had the queen's bed prepared at the other end. Near her bed he placed a bowl of water. Sheba soon awoke, for the seasoned food had made her very thirsty. She rose and drank of the water, but Solomon seized her hand and accused her of having broken her oath. He then worked his will with her. The king dreamt that a great light of brilliance, the *shekhina*, the divine presence, had left Israel and moved to Ethiopia. The queen departed and returned to her country where, nine months and five days later, she gave birth to a son. When the boy had grown up he went to visit his father who received him with great honour and splendour. After some time at Solomon's Court he determined to return to his mother's realm. Thereupon the king assembled the elders of Israel and commanded them to send their first-born sons with Menelik, in order to found a kind of Israelite colony. Before the young men

departed they abducted the Ark of the Covenant and took it with them to Ethiopia which now became the second Zion.

The veneration of the Queen of Sheba and her appropriation as the national ancestress of the Ethiopian people are of considerable antiquity and certainly precede the medieval *Kebra Nagast*. An interesting piece of evidence is furnished by the Ethiopian Bible translation which usually adheres fairly closely to the text of the Septuagint, but in 1 Kings 10:1 מְבָרָא לִנְסוֹתוֹ בַּחֲדָרָא 'she came to prove him with hard questions' the Ethiopic version interprets the Greek ἐν ἀντιρροσίν as 'with wisdom'.<sup>1</sup> This deliberate alteration is, perhaps, the earliest indication of the Ethiopian attitude towards the Queen of Sheba, for in this reading the quality of wisdom is related not to King Solomon but to the queen.<sup>2</sup>

The main components of the story must have had a very long period of gestation in Ethiopia and elsewhere and have possessed all the elements of a gigantic conflation of legendary cycles. When it was committed to writing, early in the fourteenth century, its principal aim was to support and buttress the Solomonic dynasty in Ethiopia. The *neburā ad Yeshaq* of Aksum, the compiler of the work, thus performed not only a literary task but carried out a political and national duty of far-reaching consequences.

There also exist a Christian Arabic<sup>3</sup> and a Coptic<sup>4</sup> version of our legend. The former is almost certainly dependent on the Ethiopian type of the story and thus constitutes a process of borrowing in a direction opposite to the usual flow.<sup>5</sup> This Arabic legend is of a composite nature: it omits all mention of an intermediary (hoopoe or merchant) between king and queen, restores the tale of the polished floor, and, to heal the queen's affliction, it introduces a piece of wood which was later used for the Cross.<sup>6</sup> The details of Sheba's seduction by Solomon tally very largely with the Ethiopic prototype. The Coptic version offers little of special interest, but it seems to have been current throughout the Christian Church in Africa.

A modern form of the legend, which yet embraces many archaic elements as well as comparatively recent folkloristic

<sup>1</sup> מְבָרָא: פְּרָרָא.  
<sup>2</sup> Oddly enough, in the parallel verse in 2 Chron. 9:1 the Ethiopic version does follow the reading of the Septuagint.  
<sup>3</sup> Published by Benold (Abb. d. Königl. Bayer. Akad. d. Wissensch., xxix, Munich, 1909), pp. xlvii-l.  
<sup>4</sup> Published by A. Roman (Abb. d. Königl. Preuss. Akad. d. Wissensch., 1897). See also Benold, op. cit., p. xl.  
<sup>5</sup> Cf. A. Caquot in *Annales d'Éthiopie*, I, 137 ff.  
<sup>6</sup> Cf. Cerulli, *Storia della lett. et.*, p. 47.



accretions, has been preserved among the Tigre in the north.<sup>1</sup> A Tigre girl by the name of *Eteye Azeb* (i.e. 'Queen of the South') seeks a cure for her deformed foot which had turned into an ass's heel. When she hears of King Solomon's powers she departs for Jerusalem together with a companion. They appear disguised as men, but the king's suspicions are aroused. At night he has a skin with honey suspended in the room, and when the two girls believe him to be asleep they get up and start licking the honey. Solomon then finds his suspicions confirmed and he takes the two women by force. The remainder of the story follows the *Kebra Nagast* version fairly closely: the birth of the son, his visit to his father, and the removal of the Ark from Jerusalem to Aksum.

The ass's heel is, of course, the counterpart of the deformed or hairy foot, but it is remarkable that this feature, so carefully avoided in the classic account of the *Kebra Nagast*, was allowed to survive in this north-Ethiopian tale. Otherwise there is—*mutatis mutandis*—broad agreement, and the bed-chamber scene reveals a close connexion in all essential matters.

Finally, a word about the queen's names: in the Old Testament she is, of course, the 'Queen of Sheba',<sup>2</sup> while in the New Testament she appears as the 'Queen of the South'.<sup>3</sup> This latter idiom goes back to a Semitic *mlkt ymyn* or *mlkt tynn* (for south is on the right-hand side when you stand facing the rising sun). I have already mentioned that the Arabic *Bilqis* is almost certainly related to Hebrew *pilegesh* and Greek *παλλακίς*. In the *Kebra Nagast* the queen's name is given as *Makeda* which has no obvious explanation: some have thought it might be connected with (Alexander) the 'Macedonian', while I would not exclude the possibility that *Makeda* might reveal a popular identification with *Candace*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Edited by E. Lietmann, *The Legend of the Queen of Sheba in the Tradition of Amm, Leyden*, 1904.

<sup>2</sup> מלכת שבא.

<sup>3</sup> Thus in the Arabic version *ملكة اليمن* (Bezdant, op. cit., p. xiv). In the Ethiopic *ገገሃት* *ገገሃት* (the possibility cannot be excluded that *ገገሃት* might be a metathetical approximation to *ገገሃት*). The Arabic *أزيب* is, of course, a loanword from Ethiopic (Nöldeke, *Neue Beiträge*, pp. 60–63).

<sup>4</sup> So already Socin, privately, as reported by Rösch, op. cit., p. 557. *Candace* is almost certainly the Meroitic *Katak* (cf. Budge, *History of Ethiopia*, I, 112), while the Syriac form is *ܩܢܕܐܥܐ* and the Ethiopic forms *ባርዕኤ* (Budge, *Life and Exploits of Alexander*, I, 106, line 19) as well as *ባርዕኤ* and *ባርዕኤ*. The name of the Queen of Sheba in the Ethiopian tradition is *ሜዳ* or *ሜዳ*. This name has hitherto defied all attempts at an explanation (see Conil Romani, *Serie*, p. 234), but I do not consider it impossible that *Makeda* is, in fact, a corruption of *Candace* (*Kandake*). One must not try to discover any phonetic reasons behind this corruption: if my conjecture is correct, then we have in the mixture of the names a complete parallel to the confusion of the stories. The fact that the name *Hendake* continues to exist

Echoes of the Sheba legend can be heard in European literature and art, though in the former they are not as plentiful as I was at first inclined to suppose. Cranmer in Shakespeare's *Henry VIII*<sup>1</sup> speaks of the queen in these terms: 'Saba was never more covetous of wisdom and fair virtue than this pure soul shall be.' George Wither (1588–1667) in a love sonnet:

I loved a lass, a fair one  
As fair as e'er was seen;  
She was indeed a rare one,  
Another Sheba queen.

Lascelles Abercrombie, in a poem on Judith,<sup>2</sup> includes a long love song ascribed to Bilqis from which I quote a few lines from the beginning and the end:

Balkis was in her marble town,  
And shadow over the world came down. . . .  
'Is there no man, is there none,  
In whom my beauty will but move  
The lust of a delighted love;  
In whom some spirit of God so thrives  
That we may wed our lonely lives?  
Is there no man, is there none?'—  
She said, 'I will go to Solomon.'

And Kipling:

There was never a Queen like Balkis,  
From here to the wide world's end;  
But Balkis talked to a butterfly  
As you would talk to a friend.

There was never a King like Solomon,  
Not since the world began;  
But Solomon talked to a butterfly  
As a man would talk to a man.

She was Queen of Sabara—  
And he was Asia's Lord—  
But they both of 'em talked to butterflies  
When they took their walks abroad!

Professor J. F. Kermode<sup>3</sup> has very kindly drawn my attention to two Yeats poems 'Solomon to Sheba' and 'Solomon and the

does not invalidate this assumption, as we possess respectable parallels for the coexistence of original and corrupt forms. The popular etymology, adduced by the *Kebra Nagast* (chap. 91), explaining *Makeda* as derived from *ḥd* 'to must', of course, be rejected.

<sup>1</sup> Act V, scene 4.

<sup>2</sup> *Emblems of Love*, London, 1918.

<sup>3</sup> I am greatly indebted to him for his very helpful observations.



Witch' which reflect several facets of the oriental legend. Professor Kermode says that 'the second poem is loaded with doctrine. It stems partly from Arthur Symons's "The Lover of the Queen of Sheba" (published in 1900) and partly from Mme Blavatsky's *The Key of Solomon the King*.'

In Symons the Queen of Sheba is a learned occultist. Yeats seems to interpret the lovemaking as imitating the action of the Divine Parents (Creator and 'celestial matrix'). The Cock is Hermetic, also perhaps Cabbalistic like so much else. The point is that the sexual act figures the perfect renewal which will undo the work of the 'brigand apple', I think. They are platonic in hoping to find themselves replaced by their platonic forms. I suppose we are to believe that when they achieve perfect sexual union Choice and Chance will be one and the world will end.

See also the detailed discussion in F. A. C. Wilson, *Yeats's Iconography* (1960), pp. 276 ff.

Handel deals with the Sheba theme in his Oratorio *Solomon*, and especially in Act III whose introductory 'symphony' is generally referred to as 'The Arrival of the Queen of Sheba'.<sup>1</sup> Karl Goldmark (1830-1915) has written an opera *Die Königin von Saba* which I have, unfortunately, never seen performed. Professor D. Winton Thomas has very kindly drawn my attention to Gounod's opera *La Reine de Saba* (1862).

The Queen of Sheba has experienced her greatest and most far-flung development in the area of painting. In Persian art she may often be seen standing in water before King Solomon. In Ethiopian traditional art this theme has had an enduring influence to the present day: its conventional tableau form divides the story into forty-four pictures, arranged in four rows of eleven. It tells the legend as embodied in the *Kebra Nagast* and includes most realistic representations of the royal bed-chamber scenes (the removal men who recently handled my large Sheba canvas described the picture as a strip-cartoon).

There is a window in King's College Chapel, Cambridge, which depicts the visit of the Queen of Sheba to King Solomon: the king is seated on his throne and between him and the queen is an area of blue glass representing the pool of the Muslim legend.<sup>2</sup> In European art the queen has often become web-footed and can thus be seen in the company of apostles, prophets, patriarchs, and kings in groups of symbolic statuary over church doors, at Chartres or Dijon or Le Mans. On the other hand, she

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Winton Dean, *Handel's Dramatic Oratorios and Masques*, O.U.P., 1959, p. 573.

<sup>2</sup> An exceptionally learned article on this subject appeared in *The Times* of 28 June 1954.

has become *La reine pédaque* ('Queen Goose-foot') to adorn the signboards of restaurants and taverns. Lorenzo Ghiberti, Piero della Francesca, Tintoretto, and many others have painted magnificent pictures of the Queen of Sheba arriving at King Solomon's Court, and some young Ethiopian artists have recently endeavoured to represent an amalgam of the Byzantine and Western traditions.<sup>1</sup>

Many features and details of the Sheba legend remain elusive, and the Queen's provenance, person, and character will be shrouded in the twilight of mystery. 'Behold, the half was not told me', she said in taking leave of Solomon. Had his answer been recorded, he might well have said: 'Nor to me, Madam, about you.' But most probably he said nothing. 'As the wisest of men and the husband of 700 wives he must surely have known where the last word belongs.'<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A charming cartoon of King Solomon in an aeroplane and the Queen of Sheba with a transistor radio set (by Sprod) appears in Sir Leonard Woolley's *As I Saw It Remembered*. This is accompanied by a somewhat modernized version of the story (pp. 64-67).

<sup>2</sup> *The Times*, 28 June 1954.



## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- D'ABBADIE, A., *Catalogue raisonné de manuscrits éthiopiens*, Paris, 1859.  
 ABRAHAM, M., *Légendes juives apocryphes sur la vie de Moïse*, Paris, 1925.  
 ABU ŠĀLIḤ, *Churches and monasteries of Egypt and some neighbouring countries* (transl. and ed. by B. T. A. Evetts, with notes by A. J. Butler), Oxford, 1895.  
 ABUL-HAGGAG, Y., *A contribution to the physiography of Northern Ethiopia*, London, 1961.  
 Accademia Nazionale dei Lincei, *Atti del Convegno Internazionale di Studi Etiopici*, Rome, 1960.  
 AËSCOLY, A. Z., 'The Falashas (bibliography)' in *Kiryath Sepher*, xii, xiii (1935-7).  
 — *Sefer Ha-Falashim* (in Hebrew), Jerusalem, 1943.  
 — *Recueil de textes falachas*, Paris, 1951.  
 ALBRIGHT, W. F., 'Dedan' in *Albrecht Alt Festschrift* (*Geschichte und Altes Testament*), Tübingen, 1953.  
 — 'The archaeology of the ancient Near East' in *Peake's Commentary on the Bible* (ed. by M. Black and H. H. Rowley), 1962.  
 ARMSTRONG, C. H., *Initia Amharica*, Part I, Grammar, Cambridge, 1908.  
 — *Initia Amharica*, Part II, English-Amharic vocabulary, Cambridge, 1910.  
 BAARS, W., and ZUURMOND, R., 'The project for a new edition of the Ethiopic Book of Jubilees', in *JSS* ix, 1, Spring 1964.  
 BACHMANN, J., *Der Prophet Jesaja nach der äthiopischen Bibeldruckausgabe*, (I. Teil: Der äthiopische Text; II. Teil: Der äthiopische Text in seinem Verhältnis zur Septuaginta), Berlin, 1893.  
 BAETEMAN, J., *Dictionnaire amarigna-français*, Dire Dawa, 1929.  
 BARTH, J., *Die Nominalbildung in den semitischen Sprachen*, Leipzig, 1889.  
 BARRANO, F. DA, *Vocabolario tigray-italiano e repertorio italiano-tigray*, Rome, 1918.  
 — *Old Testament in Ge'ez*, 4 vols., Asmara, 1922-6.  
 BARNET, R., *Histoire de la conquête de l'Abyssinie (XV<sup>e</sup> siècle)* (Arabic text and French transl. of Shihāb ad-Dīn's *Futuh al-Habasha*), Paris, 1897-1901.  
 BECKINGHAM, C. F., and HUNTINGFORD, G. W. B. (translators), *Some records of Ethiopia, 1593-1646* (Manoel de Almeida and Bahrey), Hakluyt Society, London, 1954.  
 — *The Prester John of the Indies*, 2 vols., Hakluyt Society, London, 1961.  
 BECKINGHAM, C. F., 'The "Itinerario" of Jeronimo Lobo' in *JSS* x, 2, Autumn 1965.  
 — *The achievements of Prester John* (Inaugural Lecture), School of Oriental and African Studies, London, 1966.  
 BERTON, A. F. L., 'ABRAHA' in *Encyclopaedia of Islam*, new edition.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

147

- *A descriptive grammar of Epigraphic South Arabian*, London, 1962.  
 BEN YEHUDA, ELIEZER, *Thesaurus totius Hebraeae et veteris et recentioris*, American ed., 8 vols., New York, 1960.  
 BENT, T., *The Sacred City of the Ethiopians* (with a chapter by D. H. Müller on the Yeha and Aksum inscriptions), London, 1893.  
 BENZINGER, I., 'Die Bücher der Könige' in *Martí's Kurzer Hand-Commentar zum Alten Testament*, Tübingen, 1899.  
 — *Hebräische Archäologie*, 3rd ed., Leipzig, 1927.  
 BEVAN, A. A., *The hymn of the Soul* (Syriac text and English transl.), Cambridge University Press, 1897.  
 BEZOLD, G., *Kebra Nagast*, Munich, 1905.  
 — 'Das arabisch-äthiopische Testamentum Adam?' in *Nöldeke Festschrift*, Gießen, 1906.  
 BLACK, M., *An Aramaic approach to the Gospels and Acts*, 2nd ed., Oxford, 1954.  
 BOYD, O., *The Octateuch in Ethiopic, according to the text of the Paris Codex, with the variants of five other MSS.* in *Bibliotheca Aethiopica*, Part I: Genesis, Leiden and Princeton, 1909; Part II: Exodus and Leviticus, 1911.  
 BREASTED, J. H., *History of Egypt*, 2nd ed., London, 1948.  
 BROCKELMANN, C., *Grundriß der vergleichenden Grammatik der semitischen Sprachen*, 2 vols., Berlin, 1908-13.  
 — *Lexicon Syriacum*, 2nd ed., Halle, 1928.  
 BRUCE, J., *Travels to discover the source of the Nile*, 1st ed., 5 vols., Edinburgh, 1790; 3rd ed., 8 vols., Edinburgh, 1813.  
 BUDQZ, SIR E. A. WALLIS, *The life and exploits of Alexander the Great*, 2 vols., London, 1896.  
 — *Life of Hanna* (Lady Meux MSS. 2-5; text and transl.), London, 1900.  
 — *A history of Ethiopia*, 2 vols., London, 1928.  
 — *Book of the saints of the Ethiopian Church*, 4 vols., Cambridge, 1928.  
 — *The Queen of Sheba and her only son Menelik*, London, 1932.  
 — *Amulets and talismans*, New York, 1961.  
 BURKITT, F. C., 'Text and versions' in *Encyclopaedia Biblica*, iv, London, 1903.  
 BUTLER, A. J., see ABU ŠĀLIḤ.  
 BUXTON, D. R., *Travels in Ethiopia*, London, 1949.  
 CAQUOT, A., 'La Reine de Saba et le bois de la croix' in *Annales d'Éthiopie*, i, 1955.  
 — 'La royauté sacrée en Éthiopie' in *Annales d'Éthiopie*, ii, 1957.  
 CASTANHO, *The Portuguese expedition to Abyssinia* (transl. and ed. by R. S. Whiteway), Hakluyt Society, London, 1902.  
 CERULLI, E., 'Canti popolari amarici' in *RRAL*, 1916.  
 — 'Di alcune varietà di inni della chiesa etiopica' in *Orientalia*, 1934.  
 — *Studi etiopici*:  
 1. *La lingua e la storia di Havar*, Rome, 1936.  
 2. *La lingua e la storia dei Sidamo*, Rome, 1938.



- CERULLI, E. *Studi etiopici* (cont.):  
 III. *Il linguaggio dei Giangersa*, etc., Rome, 1938.  
 IV. *La lingua caffina*, Rome, 1951.  
 — *Il libro etiopico dei miracoli di Maria e le sue fonti nella letteratura del Medio Evo latino*, Rome, 1943.  
 — *Etiopi in Palestina*, 2 vols., Rome, 1943-7.  
 — *Storia della letteratura etiopica*, Rome, 1956.  
 — *Scritti teologici etiopici dei secoli XVI-XVII*, 2 vols., Città del Vaticano, 1958-60.  
 CHAÎNE, M., *Catalogue des manuscrits éthiopiens de la Collection Antoine d'Abbadie*, Paris, 1912.  
 — *Catalogue des manuscrits éthiopiens de la Collection Mondon-Vidaillhet*, Paris, 1913.  
 Chamber of Commerce, *Guide book of Ethiopia*, Addis Ababa, 1954.  
 CHARLES, R. H., *The Ethiopic version of the Hebrew Book of Jubilees*, Oxford, 1895.  
 — *The Book of Jubilees or The Little Genesis* (transl. from Ethiopic text, introduction, notes), London, 1902.  
 — *The Ethiopic version of the Book of Enoch* (Anecdota Oxoniensia), Oxford, 1906.  
 — *The Book of Enoch* (English transl.), 2nd ed., Oxford, 1912.  
 — *The Apocrypha and Pseudepigrapha of the Old Testament*, 2 vols., Oxford, 1913.  
 CHEESMAN, R. E., *Lake Tana and the Blue Nile*, London, 1936.  
 COHEN, M., 'La prononciation traditionnelle du guèze', *JA*, Paris, 1921.  
 — 'Couplets Amhariques du Choa' in *JA* 1924.  
 — *Études d'éthiopien méridional*, Paris, 1931.  
 — *Traité de langue amharique*, Paris, 1936.  
 — *Nouvelles Études d'éthiopien méridional*, Paris, 1939.  
 — *Essai comparatif sur le vocabulaire et la phonétique des chamito-sémitiques*, Paris, 1947.  
 — 'Sur la notation musicale éthiopienne' in *Levi Della Vida Festschrift*, Rome, 1956.  
 CONTI ROMANI, G., 'Sulla versione e sulla revisione delle sacre scritture in Etiopico' in *ZA* x, Leipzig, 1895.  
 — 'Note per la storia letteraria abissina' in *RRAL* 1899.  
 — *Vitae Sanctorum Indigenarum: Acta Margaretae* (text and transl.), *C.S.C.O.*, vols. 33 and 34 (= Aeth. 16 and 17), 1904.  
 — *Vitae Sanctorum Indigenarum: Acta S. Basilei Mika'el et S. Ananias*, 2 vols. (Eth. text 28/11; transl. 29/12), *C.S.C.O.*, 1905.  
 — 'Sugli Habašat' in *RRAL* 1906.  
 — *Liber Axumae*, *C.S.C.O.*, 1909.  
 — 'Un documento sul cristianesimo nella Iemen ai tempi del re Sarabbil Yakku' in *RRAL* 1910.  
 — 'L'itinerario di Beniamino da Tudela e l'Etiopia' in *ZA* xxvii, Leipzig, 1911-12.

- 'Sul Metropolita Salama d'Etiopia' in *ZA* xxvii, Leipzig, 1911-12.  
 — 'Notice sur les manuscrits éthiopiens de la Collection d'Abbadie', *JA* 1912-15.  
 — 'Appunti di storia e letteratura falascià' in *RSO* viii, 1920.  
 — 'Expéditions et possessions des Habašat en Arabie' in *JA* 1921.  
 — Review of Rathjens: *Die Juden in Abessinien* in *OM* 1921.  
 — 'Le lingue e le letterature semitiche d'Abissinia' in *OM* 1921-2 (pp. 38-48, 169-76).  
 — 'Nuovi appunti sui giudei d'Abissinia' in *RRAL* 1922.  
 — 'La caduta della dinastia Zagwe e la versione amarica del Be'ela Nagast' in *RRAL* 1922.  
 — 'Leggende geografiche giudaiche del IX Secolo (Il Sefer Eldad)' in *Bollettino della R. Società Geografica Italiana*, 1925.  
 — *Storia d'Etiopia*, Bergamo, 1928.  
 — *L'Abissinia*, Rome, 1929.  
 — *Etiopia e genti d'Etiopia*, Florence, 1937.  
 — *Lingua tigrina*, Milan, 1940.  
 — *Proverbi, tradizioni e canzoni tigrine*, Verbania, 1942.  
 — 'La regalità sacra in Abissinia e nei regni dell'Africa centrale ed occidentale' in *Studi e materiali di storia delle religioni*, xxi, Bologna, 1948.  
 — and RICCI, L. (ed.), *Mashafa Berhan: Il Libro della luce del Negus Zar'a Ya'qob* (text and transl.; 4 parts), *C.S.C.O.*, 1964/5.  
 Cosmas Indicopleustes, see MCCRENDLE, J. W.  
 COULBEAUX, P. S., and SCHREIBER, J., *Dictionnaire de la langue tigré*, Vienna, 1915.  
 COWLEY, A., *Aramaic Papyri of the fifth century B.C.*, Oxford, 1923.  
 CURTIS, E. L., *The Books of the Chronicles*, I.C.C., Edinburgh, 1910.  
 DEAN, WINTON, *Handel's dramatic oratorios and masques*, Oxford University Press, 1959.  
 DILLMANN, A., *Catalogus Codicum MSS. Aethiopicorum qui in Museo Britannico asservantur*, London, 1847.  
 — *Catalogus Codicum Manuscriptorum Bibliothecae Bodlicianae Oxoniensis*, pars vii, Oxford, 1848.  
 — *Liber Henoch Aethiopice*, Leipzig, 1851.  
 — *Liber Jubileorum*, Kiel, 1859.  
 — *Chrestomathia Aethiopica Editio et Glossario Explanaata*, Lipsiae, 1866.  
 — *Lexicon Linguae Aethiopicae*, Lipsiae, 1865.  
 — *Ascensio Isaiae*, Leipzig, 1877.  
 — *Verzeichniss der abessinischen Handschriften*, Königliche Bibliothek, Berlin, 1878.  
 — 'Zur Geschichte des Axumitischen Reichs im vierten bis sechsten Jahrhundert' in *Abh. d. Königl. Akad. d. Wissensch. zu Berlin*, 1880.  
 — *Über die Regierung, insbesondere die Kirchenordnung des Königs Zar'a-Jacob*, Berlin, 1884.  
 — 'Die Kriegthaten des Königs 'Amda-Sion gegen die Muslim' in *Sitzungsberichte d. K. Preuss. Akad. d. Wissensch.*, Berlin, 1884.



- DILLMANN, A., *Biblia Veteris Testamenti Aethiopica*, Bd. I (1853): Oct.; Bd. II, Fasc. 1 (1861): Reg. I, II; Fasc. 2 (1871): Reg. III, IV; Bd. V (1894): Libri Apocr., Leipzig, 1853-94.  
 — *Ethiopic grammar* (transl. by J. A. Orichton), London, 1907.  
 DORESSY, J., *Au pays de la Reine de Sabay l'Éthiopie antique et moderne*, Paris, 1956.  
 — *L'Empire du Prêtre Jean*, 2 vols., Paris, 1957.  
 DREWES, A. J., *Inscriptions de l'Éthiopie antique*, Leiden, 1962.  
 DROWER, LADY, and MACGUCH, R., *A Mandaic dictionary*, Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1963.  
 DUHM, B., *Die Psalmen in Marti's Handkommentar*, 2nd ed., Tübingen, 1922.  
 EADIE, J. I., *An Amharic reader*, Cambridge University Press, 1924.  
 ELBOGEN, I., *Der jüdische Gottesdienst in seiner geschichtlichen Entwicklung*, 2nd ed., Frankfurt, 1924.  
 EPSTEIN, ABRAHAM, *Eldad Hadani*, Pressburg, 1891.  
*Ethiopia Observer*, Journal published in Ethiopia and Britain from December 1956- .  
*Ethiopian Studies: Proceedings of the International Conference of Ethiopian Studies at Manchester University*, 1963, edited by E. Ullendorff and C. F. Beckingham, JSS, Spring 1964.  
 'Ethiopia' and 'Eritrea' in *Enciclopedia Italiana*, vol. xiv (pp. 220-34, 459-92).  
 EVETTA, B. T. A. (transl. and ed.), *see* ABU ŠALIḤ.  
 FAITLOVICH, J., *Mota Musa* (texte éthiopien traduit en hébreu et en français — annoté et accompagné d'extraits arabes), Paris, 1906.  
 — *The Falashas*, Philadelphia, 1920.  
 FARIS, N. A. (ed.), *Hamdāni, Ikhl*, 8th book, Princeton, 1940.  
 FARMER, H. G., *A history of Arabian music*, London, 1929.  
 FINDLAY, L., *The monolithic churches at Lalibela in Ethiopia*, Cairo, 1944.  
 FISHER, W. B., *The Middle East*, London, 1950.  
 FLAD, J. M., *The Falashas of Abyssinia*, London, 1869.  
 — *60 Jahre in der Mission unter den Falaschas*, Gießen, 1922.  
 FLEMING, J., 'Hiob Ludolf — Ein Beitrag zur Geschichte der orientalischen Philologie' in *Beiträge zur Assyriologie*, 1 and 2, 1890, 1894.  
 — *Das Buch Henoch* (aeth. Text), Leipzig, 1902.  
 FRAENCKEL, S., *Die aramäischen Fremdwörter im Arabischen*, Leiden, 1868 (reprint Hildesheim 1962).  
 FUMAGALLI, G., *Bibliografia etiopica*, Milan, 1893.  
 GAUVIN, M., *The Falasha Version of the Testaments of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob*, Manchester University Ph.D. thesis, 1963.  
 GEIGER, A., *Was hat Mohammed aus dem Judentum aufgenommen*, Bonn, 1833.  
 GERENIUS, W., *Hebräisches und aramäisches Handwörterbuch über das Alte Testament* (bearbeitet von Frants Buhl), 13th ed., Leipzig, 1910.  
 GILDEMEISTER, J., 'Brief an C. R. Gregory vom 20. April 1882' in Gregory's *Prolegomena zu Tischendorf's N.T. graeco*, vol. 3, 1894.

- GINZBERG, L., *The legends of the Jews*, 7 vols., Philadelphia, 1947.  
 GLASER, E., *Die Abessinier in Arabien und Africa*, Munich, 1895.  
 GLEAVE, H. C., *The Ethiopic version of Song of Songs*, London, 1951.  
 GOLDENBERG, G., *The Amharic tense-system*, Ph.D. thesis, in Hebrew, Jerusalem University, 1966.  
 GOLDSCHMIDT, L., *Das Buch Henoch* (transl. from Ethiopic into Hebrew), Berlin, 1892.  
 — *Die abessinischen Handschriften der Stadtbibliothek zu Frankfurt a/M* (Rappelsche Sammlung), Berlin, 1897.  
 GOLDZIEHER, I., *Muhammedanische Studien*, 1 and 2 (reprint), Hildesheim, 1961.  
 GORDIS, R., *The Song of Songs* (study, translation, commentary), New York, 1954.  
 GORDON, C. H., *Introduction to Old Testament times*, Ventnor, N.J., 1953.  
 — *Ugaritic textbook*, Rome, 1965.  
 GRAF, G., *Geschichte der christlichen arabischen Literatur*, 5 vols., Città del Vaticano, 1944-53.  
 GRÉBAUT, S., and TISSERANT, E., *Codices Aethiopici Vaticani et Borgiani Barberiniani Russiani* 865, 2 vols., 1935-6.  
 GRÉBAUT, S., *Catalogue des manuscrits éthiopiens de la Collection Grimaldi*, 3 vols., Paris, 1938, 1941, 1944.  
 GREGORY, C. R., *Prolegomena zu Tischendorf's N.T. Graeco*, edna octavo, vol. iii, 1894.  
 GRÜNBAUM, M., *Neue Beiträge zur semitischen Sagenkunde*, Leiden, 1893.  
*Guda dell'Africa Orientale Italiana*, Milan, 1938.  
 GUIDI, I., 'Le traduzioni degli Evangelii in arabo e in etiopico' in *MRAL* 1888.  
 — *Il Feiha Nagast* (Eth. text, Italian transl.), 2 vols., Rome, 1897 and 1899.  
 — 'Qene o inni abissini' in *RRAL* 1900.  
 — *Vocabolario amaro-italiano*, Rome, 1901.  
 — *L'Arabie antislamique*, Paris, 1921.  
 — 'La Chiesa abissina' in *Oriente moderno*, Rome, 1922.  
 — 'Contributi alla storia letteraria di Abissinia' (I. I. Scr'ata Mangest) in *RRAL* 1922.  
 — 'Il Be'la Nagast' in *Festschrift Paul Haupt*, Leipzig, 1926.  
 — (Breve) *Storia della letteratura etiopica*, Rome, 1932.  
 — *Grammatica elementare della lingua amara*, Rome, 1936.  
 — 'Le synaxaire éthiopien' (Sanc, Hamle, Nahase, Faguemen) in *Patrologia Orientalis*, ix. 4, Paris.  
 — and others, *Supplementi al Vocabolario amaro-italiano*, Rome, 1940.  
 — *Storia e cultura degli arabi fino alla morte di Maometto*, Firenze, 1951.  
 GUILLAUME, A., 'The influence of Judaism on Islam' in *The legacy of Israel*, Oxford, 1927.  
 HABERLAND, E., *Galla Sud-Aethiopica*, Stuttgart, 1963.  
 — *Untersuchungen zum äthiopischen Königtum*, Wiesbaden, 1965.  
 HACKSPILL, L., 'Die äthiopische Evangelienübersetzung' in *ZA* xi, 1896.



- HALÉVY, J., *Prières des Falashas*, Paris, 1877.  
 — *Te'ezaza Sanbat*, Paris, 1902.  
 — 'La légende de la Reine de Saba' in *Annuaire de l'École des Hautes Études* (Section des sciences historiques), 1905.  
 HAMMERSCHMIDT, E., *Studies in the Ethiopic Anaphoras*, Berlin, 1961.  
 — 'Kultsymbolik der koptischen und äthiopischen Kirche' in *Orthodox. und orient. Christentum*, 1952.  
 — *Stellung und Bedeutung des Sabbats in Äthiopien*, Stuttgart, 1963.  
 — *Symbolik des orientalischen Christentums, Tafelband*, Stuttgart, 1966.  
 HARDEN, J. M., *The Ethiopic Didascalia*, Soc. for Promoting Christ. Knowledge, London, 1920.  
 HARPER, W. R., *Amos and Hosea* (I.C.C.), Edinburgh, 1936.  
 HARRIS, W. CORNWALLIS, *The highlands of Ethiopia*, 3 vols., London, 1844.  
 HARTOM, A. S. (U. Cassuto, General Editor), *Psalms* (in Hebrew), Tel Aviv, 1957.  
 HASTINGS, JAMES (ed.), *A dictionary of the Bible*, 5 vols., Edinburgh, 1906.  
 HEIDER, A., *Die äthiopische Bibelübersetzung* (Ihre Herkunft, Art, Geschichte, und ihr Wert für alt- und neutestamentliche Wissenschaft), Leipzig, 1902.  
 Herodotus (transl. into English by Henry Cary), London, 1891.  
 HEZOG, J. J., *Realencyklopädie für protestantische Theologie und Kirche*, 3rd ed., 22 vols., 1896-1913.  
 HIRSCHBERG, H. Z., *Yisra'el ba'Arab*, Tel Aviv, 1946.  
 HITTI, P. K., *History of the Arabs*, 4th ed., London, 1949.  
 HÖFNER, M., 'Über sprachliche und kulturelle Beziehungen zwischen Sudarabien und Äthiopien im Altertum' in *Atti del Conv. Internaz. di Studi Etiopici*, 1960.  
 HOMMEL, F., *Ethnologie und Geographie des Alten Orients*, Munich, 1926.  
 HUBBARD, D. A., *The literary sources of the Kebra Nagast*, as yet unpublished Ph.D. thesis, St. Andrews University, 1956.  
 HUNTINGFORD, G. W. B., *The glorious victories of Amda Seyon*, Oxford, 1965.  
 HURTT, H. M., *The Church of Abyssinia*, London, 1928.  
*Illustrated London News*, 'The Abyssinian expedition and the life and reign of King Theodore', history by R. Acton, London, 1868.  
 IRVINE, A. K., 'HABASHAT' in *Encyclopaedia of Islam*, 2nd ed., 1965.  
 — 'On the identity of Habashat in the South Arabian inscriptions' in *JSS* x. 2, Autumn 1965.  
*Isalah in Tigre* (ed. and transl. by C. R. Sundström), Asmara, 1925.  
 ISENBERG, C. W., *Dictionary of the Amharic language*, London, 1841.  
 — *Grammar of the Amharic language*, London, 1842.  
 JAMME, A., *Sabaeen and Hasaeen inscriptions from Saudi Arabia* (Studi semitici, 23) Rome, 1966.  
 JOHNSON, A. R., *Sacral kingship in Ancient Israel*, Cardiff, 1967.  
 JOSEPHUS, see WHISTON, W.  
 JOWETT, W., *Christian researches in the Mediterranean*, London, 1822.

- KAMNERER, A., *Essai sur l'histoire antique d'Abyssinie*, Paris, 1926.  
 KATSH, A. I., *Judaism in Islam*, 1954.  
 KOEHLER, L., and BAUMGARTNER, W., *Lexicon in Veteris Testamenti Libros*, Leiden, 1948-53; *Supplementum*, Leiden, 1958.  
 KOLMODIN, J. A., 'Meine Studienreise in Abessinien, 1908-10' in *MO*, Uppsala, 1910.  
 KÖNIG, E., *Neue Studien über Schrift, Aussprache und allgemeine Formenlehre des Äthiopischen*, Leipzig, 1877.  
 KRAPP, J. L., *Evangelia sacra . . . in linguam tigricam vertit Dehtera Matheos Habessinus, Adoac; Tigrac oppido, natus, nunc primum in lucem edita per J. L. Krapf . . . Basileae . . . in officina typographica Chrischonae*, MDCCCLXVI.  
 — *The Books of the Old Testament*, translated into the Amharic language by Abba Rukh, an Abyssinian Learned. For the first time corrected and edited in England by the Revd. Thomas Platt. Now improved after the Hebrew original by the Revd. Dr. Krapf in Germany. Printed at the expense and by the request of the B. & F.B.S. in London at the Mission-Press of St. Chrischona, near Basle, Switzerland, 3 vols., 1871-3.  
 KRAUSS, S., 'Talmudische Nachrichten über Arabien' in *ZDMG* 1916.  
 KROMREI, E., *Glaubenslehre und Gebräuche der älteren abessinischen Kirche*, Leipzig, 1895.  
 LANTSCHOOT, A. VAN, 'Abba Salāmā, métropolit d'Éthiopie (1348-1388) et son rôle de traducteur' in *Atti del Conv. Internaz. di Studi Etiopici*, 1960.  
 LEONESSA, MAURO DA, 'Un trattato sul calendario redatto al tempo di re 'Amda-Syon I' in *RSE* iii. 3, 1943.  
 LESLAU, W., *Lexique Soqotri (sudarabique moderne)*, Paris, 1938.  
 — *Documents tigrigna*, Paris, 1941.  
 — *Falasha Anthology*, New Haven, 1951.  
 — *Coutumes et Croyances des Falachas*, Paris, 1957.  
 — 'A supplementary Falasha bibliography' in *Studies in bibliography and booklore*, iii. 1, June, 1957.  
 — *Ethiopic and South Arabic contributions to the Hebrew lexicon*, Univ. of California Press, 1958.  
 — 'The names of the weekdays in Ethiopic' in *JSS*, Spring 1961.  
 — *An annotated bibliography of the Semitic languages of Ethiopia*, The Hague, 1965.  
 LEVINE, D. N., *War and Gold*, University of Chicago Press, 1965.  
 LIPCHITZ, D., *Textes éthiopiens magico-religieux*, Paris, 1940.  
 LIPSKY, GEORGE A., *Ethiopia (its people, its society, its culture)*, New Haven, Conn., 1962.  
 LITTMANN, E., *The legend of the Queen of Sheba in the tradition of Axum*, Leiden, 1904.  
 — 'Geschichte der äthiopischen Litteratur' in *Geschichte d. christlichen Litteraturen des Orients*, 2nd ed., Leipzig, 1909.



- LITTMANN, E., *Publications of the Princeton expedition to Abyssinia; tales, customs, names and dirges of the Tigre tribes*, Leiden, 1910-15.  
 — *Deutsche Aksum Expedition*, Berlin, 1913.  
 — Review of S. A. B. Mercer's *The Ethiopic text of the book of Ecclesiastes* (London 1931) in *OLZ* 1933/6.  
 — *Abessinische Klagelieder*, Tübingen, 1949.  
 — 'Richard Sundström — 1869-1919' in *Ein Jahrhundert Orientalistik*, Wiesbaden, 1955.  
 — and HÖFNER, M., *Wörterbuch der Tigre-Sprache*, Wiesbaden, 1956-1962.  
 LORO, J., *A voyage to Abyssinia* (transl. into French by Le Grand and into English by Dr. Samuel Johnson), London, 1735.  
 LÖFGREN, O., *Die äthiopische Übersetzung des Propheten Daniel*, Paris, 1927.  
 — 'Die äthiopische Bibelausgabe der Katholischen Mission' (mit einer Kollation des Danieltextes) in *MO* xxiii, 1929.  
 — *Jona, Natanael, Habakuk, Zephania, Haggai, Sacharja und Maleachi äthiopisch unter Zugrundelegung des Oxford M.S. Huntington 625 nach mehreren Handschriften herausgegeben*, Uppsala, 1930.  
 — Review of S. A. B. Mercer's *The Ethiopic text of the book of Ecclesiastes* (London 1931) in *MO* xxvii, 1933.  
 — 'The necessity of a critical edition of the Ethiopian Bible', paper submitted to 3rd Int. Conf. of Eth. Stud., Addis Ababa, 1966 (still unpublished at the time of writing, Spring 1967).  
 LONGRICE, S. H., *A short history of Eritrea*, Oxford, 1945.  
 LUDOLF, H., *Grammatica Aethiopica*, Frankfurt, 1661.  
 — *Historia Aethiopica*, Frankfurt, 1681.  
 — *Commentarius ad suam Historiam Aethiopicam*, Frankfurt, 1691.  
 — *Grammatica Linguae Amharicae*, Frankfurt, 1698.  
 — *Lexicon Aethiopo-Latinum*, Frankfurt, 1699.  
 — *Psalterium Davidis aethiopicum et latinum cum duobus impressis et tribus MSSis codicibus diligenter collatum et emendatum*, Frankfurt, 1701.  
 MCCRINDLE, J. W. (transl. and ed.), *Comas, Christian Topography*, Hakluyt Society, London, 1897.  
 MARIN, N., *The Ethiopian empire, federation and laws*, Rotterdam, 1954.  
 MARIANUS VICTORINUS, *Chaldaea seu Aethiopiae linguae institutiones*, Rome, 1552.  
 MARKHAM, C. R., *A history of the Abyssinian expedition*, London, 1869.  
 Mäḥfāḥ Qeddāse (Missale Aethiopicum), published by the Vatican Library, Rome, 1943.  
 — Ge'ez and Amharic, Addis Ababa 1949/50.  
 MATHEW, D., *Ethiopia. Study of a polity 1540-1935*, London, 1947.  
 MERCER, S. A. B., *The Ethiopic Liturgy*, London, 1915.  
 — *The Ethiopic text of the Book of Ecclesiastes*, London, 1931.  
 MEZFIW WOLDE MARIAM, 'An estimate of the population of Ethiopia' in *Ethiopia Observer*, v. 2, 1961.  
 — *A preliminary atlas of Ethiopia*, Addis Ababa, 1962.

- Missione Cattolica dell'Eritrea, *Grammatica della lingua tigre*, Asmara, 1919.  
 MITTWOCH, E., 'Dschanhoi — die amharische Bezeichnung für "Majestät"' in *ZA* 1911.  
 — *Die traditionelle Aussprache des Aethiopischen*, Berlin, 1926.  
 MONDON-VIDALHET, F. M. C., 'La musique éthiopienne' in *Encyclopédie de la musique et dictionnaire du Conservatoire*, 1<sup>re</sup> partie, pp. 3179-96, Paris, 1922.  
 MONNERET DE VILLARD, U., *Aksum*, Rome, 1938.  
 MONTGOMERY, J. A., 'The Ethiopic text of the Acts of the Apostles' in *Harvard Theological Review*, xxvii, pp. 169 ff., Cambridge, Mass., 1934.  
 MONTI DELLA CORTE, A. A., *Lalibela*, Rome, 1940.  
 — *I castelli di Gondar*, Rome, 1938.  
 MORDINI, A., 'Il Convento di Gunde Gundit' in *RSE* 1953.  
 MORENO, M. M., 'Struttura e terminologia del Sāwasaw' in *RSE* viii, 1950.  
 MÜLLER, W. MAX, *Äthiopien*, Leipzig, 1904.  
 MUNZINGER, W., *Vocabulaire de la langue tigre* (Appendix to Dillmann's *Lexicon*), 1863.  
 MURAD KAMIL, Josippon's *History of the Jews*, New York-Berlin, 1937.  
 NAU, F. (ed.), 'Histoire de Akhondemneh', *Patrologia Orientalis*, iii, 1909.  
 NIELSEN, D., *Handbuch der alt-arabischen Altertumskunde*, Copenhagen, 1927.  
 NOLDEKE, T., Review of Dillmann's *Regierung*, insb. *Kirchenordnung des Zar'a-Jacob* (Berlin 1884) in *GGA* 1884.  
 — *Kurzgefasste syrische Grammatik*, Leipzig, 1898.  
 — *Neue Beiträge zur semitischen Sprachwissenschaft*, Strasbourg, 1910.  
 — 'Semitic languages' in *Encyclopaedia Britannica*.  
 — *Geschichte des Qurāns* (reprint), Hildesheim, 1961.  
 OESTERLEY, W. O. E., *The Jewish background of the Christian Liturgy*, Oxford, 1925.  
 PAUL, PÉRO, *Historia de Ethiopia*, 3 vols., Porto, 1945.  
 PALMER, F. R., *The morphology of the Tigre noun*, Oxford, 1962.  
 PANKHURST, R., *An introduction to the economic history of Ethiopia from early times to 1800*, 1961.  
 PARKYNS, MANFIELD, *Life in Abyssinia*, London 1966 impression of 2nd ed. 1868 (1st ed. 1853).  
 PRAKE's commentary on the Bible (ed. by M. Black and H. H. Rowley), 1952.  
 PEARCE, NATHANIEL, *The life and adventures of Nathaniel Pearce*, written by himself, London, 1891.  
 PEREIRA, F. M. ESTEVES, *Patrologia Orientalis*, Ethiopic text edition of *Job* (1907); *Esther* (1913); *Amos* (1917); *Ezra-Nehemiah* (1919).  
 PERHAM, M., *The Government of Ethiopia*, London, 1948.  
 Periplus Maris Erythraei, see SCHOFF, W. H.



- PERRUCHON, J., *Les Chroniques de Zar'a Ya'qob et de Ba'eda Maryam*, Paris, 1893.
- 'Histoire des guerres d'Amda Syon' in *JA* 1889.
- PETRUS AETHIOPS (FRATER), *Testamentum Novum cum Epistola Pauli ad Hebraeos*, Rome, 1548.
- PLATT, THOMAS PELL (ed.), *Evangelia Sancta, sub auspiciis D. Asselini, rerum gallicarum apud Aegyptios procuratoris, in linguam amharicam, vertit Abu Rumi habessinus*, London, 1824.
- *Testamentum Novum, Domini Nostri et Servatoris Jesu Christi, sub auspiciis D. Asselini . . . in linguam amharicam vertit Abu Rumi habessinus*, London, 1829.
- *The Ethiopic Didascalia* (Eth. text, Engl. transl.), London, 1894.
- *Biblia sacra amharice, sub auspiciis D. Asselini in linguam amharicam vertit Abu Rumi*, London, 1840.
- PLAYNE, B., *St. George for Ethiopia*, London, 1954.
- POLLERA, A., *Lo Stato etiopico e la sua Chiesa*, Rome-Milan, 1926.
- *Le popolazioni indigene dell'Eritrea*, Bologna, 1935.
- *L'Abissinia di ieri*, Rome, 1940.
- POLOTSKY, H. J., 'Aramaic, Syriac and Ge'ez' in *Ethiopian Studies* (JSS ix. 1), 1964.
- 'Semitics' in *The world history of the Jewish people*, vol. i (p. 107), London, 1964.
- POTTER, J., *Alphabetum seu potius syllabarium literarum Chaldaeorum, Psalterium Chaldaeorum*, Rome, 1513.
- PRAETORIUS, F., *Fabula de regina Sabaea apud Aethiopes*, Halle, 1870.
- *Grammatik der Tigrina Sprache in Abessinien*, Halle, 1871.
- *Die amharische Sprache*, Halle, 1879.
- *Aethiopische Grammatik*, Leipzig, 1886.
- 'Beiträge zur äthiopischen Grammatik und Etymologie' in *Beiträge zur Assyriologie*, i, 1890.
- 'Äthiopische Bibelübersetzungen' in *Herzog's Realencyclopädie*, iii, 1897.
- *Über die Herkunft der hebräischen Accente*, Berlin, 1901.
- PRITCHARD, J. B. (ed.), *Ancient Near Eastern texts relating to the O.T.*, Princeton University Press, 1955.
- Psalms in Tigre* (ed. and transl. by G. R. Sundström), Asmara, 1925.
- RABIN, C., *Ancient West Arabian*, London, 1951.
- RAHLFS, A., 'Nissel und Petreus, ihre aethiopischen Textausgaben und Typen' in *Nachrichten von d. Königl. Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften*, Göttingen, 1917.
- *Septuaginta Studien*, i-iii, 2nd ed., Göttingen, 1965.
- 'Die äthiopische Bibelübersetzung' in *Septuaginta Studien* (pp. 659-681), Göttingen, 1965.
- RATHJENS, C., *Die Juden in Abessinien*, Hamburg, 1921.
- Reale Società Geografica Italiana, *L'Africa Orientale*, Bologna, 1936.
- RZOKENDORF, S., 'Über den Wert der alt-äthiopischen Pentateuch-übersetzung' in *ZAW* vii, Gießen, 1887.

- RHODOKANAKIS, N., *Die äthiopischen Handschriften der K. E. Hofbibliothek zu Wien*, Vienna, 1906.
- RICCI, L., *Maṣḥafa Berhan*, see under CONTI ROSSINI, C.
- RINCK, F. T., *Macrizi Historia Regum Islamitarum in Abyssina* (Arabic text and Latin transl.), Leiden, 1790.
- ROBERTSON SMITH, W., *The religion of the Semites*, London, 1907.
- ROSEN, K. G., *Le tribù dei Menas* (Tigre text and Italian transl.), Asmara and Stockholm, 1913.
- ROBINSON, M., 'Sur éth. tābōt, ar. tābūt et les noms sémitiques de l'Arche' in *GLECS* ix, 1962.
- 'Sur la question des "influences juives" en Éthiopie' in *Ethiopian Studies* (JSS ix. 1), 1964.
- Review of E. Ullendorff's, *The Ethiopians in Bi Or* xxi. 3-4, 1964.
- 'Ghidhā' in *Encyclopaedia of Islam*, vol. ii (pp. 1057-72).
- RÖNSCH, H., *Das Buch der Jubiläen oder Die kleine Genesis* (lateinische Fragmente der Ambrosiana sowie eine von Dillmann aus 2 aeth. MSS gefertigten lat. Übertr.), Leipzig, 1874.
- RÖNSCH, G., 'Die Königin von Saba als Königin Bilqis' in *Jahrbuch für Protestantische Theologie*, vi, 1880.
- ROSENTHAL, F. (transl.), Ibn Khaldun, *Muqaddimah*, 3 vols., London, 1958.
- ROTHMÜLLER, A. M., *The music of the Jews*, London, 1953.
- ROUFF, N., 'Die älteste äthiopische Handschrift der vier Bücher der Könige' in *ZA* xvi, 1902.
- ROWLEY, H. H., and GRANT, F. C., *Dictionary of the Bible* (revised one-vol. ed. of Hastings's *Dict. of the Bible*), Edinburgh, 1963.
- RUBENSON, S., 'The lion of the tribe of Judah, Christian symbol and/or Imperial title' in *JES* iii. 2, 1965.
- RÜPPEL, E., *Reise in Abessinien*, 2 vols., Frankfurt, 1838-40.
- RUSSELL, BERTRAND, 'The Queen of Sheba's nightmare' in *Nightmares of eminent persons*, Penguin, 1962.
- RYCKMANS, G., 'Inscriptions sud-arabes' (X<sup>e</sup> série) in *Le Muséon*, lxxvi (3-4), 1953.
- 'Inscriptions sud-arabes' (XI<sup>e</sup> série) in *Le Muséon*, lxxvii, 1954.
- *Les Religions arabes préislamiques* (*L'Histoire générale des religions*), 1960.
- RYCKMANS, J., *L'Institution monarchique en Arabie méridionale*, Louvain, 1951.
- 'Le christianisme en Arabie du Sud préislamique' in *L'Orient cristiano nella storia della civiltà* (Accademia dei Lincei), Rome, 1964.
- SABELLI, LUCA DEI, *Storia di Abissinia*, Rome, 1936-8.
- SALT, H., *A voyage to Abyssinia*, London, 1814.
- SALEBERGER, G., *Die Salomo-Sage in der semitischen Literatur*, Berlin, 1907.
- SCHÄFER, J., *Die äthiopische Übersetzung des Propheten Jeremias*, Freiburg, 1912.
- SCHIRMANN, J., 'Hebrew Liturgical Poetry and Christian Hymnology' in *JQR*, October, 1953.



- SCHOFF, W. H. (transl. and ed.), *The periplus of the Erythraean Sea*, New York, 1912.
- SEGAL, M. Z., *Ben Sira* (in Hebrew), Jerusalem, 1953.
- Shihāb ad-Dīn, see BASSET, R.
- SKINNER, J., *Genesis*, 2nd ed., I.C.C., Edinburgh, 1930-51.
- SMITH, SIDNEY, 'Events in Arabia in the 6th cent. A.D.' in *BSOAS* xvi, 3, 1954.
- STERN, H. A., *Wanderings among the Falashas in Abyssinia*, London, 1862.
- STRELCYN, S., 'Quelques éléments du vocabulaire magique éthiopien' in *GLECS* v, 1949.
- *Catalogue des manuscrits éthiopiens* (Collection Grimaldi), tome iv, Paris, 1954.
- *Prêtres magiques éthiopiens pour délier les charmes* (*Rocznik Orientalisty*, xviii), Warsaw, 1955.
- 'Un traité éthiopien d'hygiène et de diététique' in *Africana*, i, 1964.
- Swedish Evangelical Mission, *Evangelium enligt Markus på Tigra-Språket*, tryckt på Missionspressen i Monkullo, 1889.
- TĀSĀMMA HARTĀ MIKĀ'EL, *Kāsate Berhan Tāsāmna: yd'anarabān māzgābā galat*, Addis Ababa, 1958/9.
- TISSERANT, E., *Ascension d'Isale* (traduction de la version éthiopienne), Paris, 1909.
- TREVASKER, G. K. N., *Eritrea. A colony in transition 1941-52*, Oxford, 1960.
- TRIMMINGHAM, J. S., *Islam in Ethiopia*, London, 1952.
- TURAIEV, BORIS, 'Testi etiopici in manoscritti di Leningrado' in *RSE* vii, 1, 1948.
- *Vitae Sanctorum Indigenarum, Acta S. Eustiathii* (Latin transl.), C.S.C.O., Louvain, 1955.
- ULLENDORFF, EDWARD, *Catalogue of Ethiopic MSS. in the Bodleian Library*, Oxford, 1951.
- 'Ugaritic marginalia' in *Orientalia*, 1951.
- 'The obelisk of Matara' in *JRAS* 1951.
- 'Studies in the Ethiopic syllabary' in *Africa*, 1951.
- Review of Leslau's *Falasha anthology* in *BSOAS* xv, 1, 1953.
- 'James Bruce of Kinnaird' in *Scottish Historical Review*, October 1953.
- 'The Ethiopic manuscripts in the Royal Library, Windsor Castle' in *RSE* xii, 1953.
- *The Semitic languages of Ethiopia*, London, 1955.
- 'The Semitic languages of Ethiopia and their contribution to general Semitic studies' in *Africa*, April 1955.
- 'Candace (Acts VIII, 27) and The Queen of Sheba' in *New Testament Studies*, ii, September 1955.
- 'Hebraic-Jewish elements in Abyssinian (Monophysite) Christianity' in *JSS*, July 1956.
- 'The contribution of South Semitics to Hebrew lexicography' in *Vetus Testamentum*, April 1956.

- 'The Biblical sources of the Ethiopian national saga' (in Hebrew) in *Sefer Tur-Sinai*, Jerusalem, 1960.
- 'An Aramaic Vorlage of the Ethiopic text of Enoch?' in *Atti del Conv. Internaz. di Studi Etiopici*, Rome, 1960.
- 'The "Death of Moses" in the literature of the Falashas' in *BSOAS*, October 1961.
- 'The Queen of Sheba' in *Bulletin of the John Rylands Library*, March 1963.
- *The Ethiopians*, Oxford University Press, 1965.
- *An Amharic Chrestomathy*, Oxford University Press, 1965.
- 'Bilqis' in *Encyclopaedia of Islam*, 2nd ed.
- and WRIGHT, S., *Catalogue of Ethiopian manuscripts in the Cambridge University Library*, Cambridge, 1961.
- URSIN, M., *Aethiopien. Impressionen aus einem altchristlichen Land*, Mannheim, 1958.
- U.S. Army, *Area handbook for Ethiopia*, Washington, 1960.
- VARENBERGH, J., 'Studien zur abessinischen Reichsordnung (Šer'ata Mangcīt)' in *ZA*, vol. 30, 1915.
- DE VAUX, R., *Ancient Israel, its life and institutions* (transl. by J. McHugh), London, 1961.
- VERMES, G., 'The use of Bar Nash/Bar Nasha in Jewish Aramaic', a contribution to: Matthew Black, *An Aramaic approach to the Gospels and Acts* (new ed.); Clarendon Press, 1968.
- VÖÖBUS, A., *Die Spuren eines älteren aethiopischen Evangelientextes im Lichte der literarischen Monumente*, Stockholm, 1951.
- *Early versions of the New Testament*, Stockholm, 1954.
- WALKER, C. H., *The Abyssinian at home*, London, 1933.
- WATT, W. MONTGOMERY, *Muhammad at Medina*, Oxford, 1956.
- WEIL, G., *Biblische Legenden der Muselmänner*, Frankfurt, 1845.
- WELLESZ, E., 'Studien zur aethiopischen Kirchenmusik' in *Oriens Christianus*, 1920.
- *History of Byzantine music and hymnography*, Oxford, 1949.
- (ed.), *Ancient and Oriental music*, London, 1957.
- WELLHAUSEN, J., *Reste arabischen Heidentums*, 3rd ed., 1961.
- WENDT, K., 'Die theologischen Auseinandersetzungen in der äthiopischen Kirche zur Zeit der Reformen des XV. Jahrhunderts' in *Atti del Conv. Internaz. di Studi Etiopici*, 1960.
- *Das Mayhafa Milad (Liber Natalitatis) und Mayhafa Sellasa (Liber Trinitatis) des Kaisers Zer'a Ya'qob*, C.S.C.O. (4 vols.); (i) Eth. text 221/41—transl. 222/42, 1962; (2) Eth. text 235/43—transl. 236/44, 1963.
- WZSCOTT, B. F., and HORT, F. J. A., edition of the *Greek New Testament*, 1881.
- WHISTON, W., *Translation of Flavius Josephus' Works* (Antiquities; Wars of the Jews; Against Apion; Dissertations), London, 1841.
- WHITEWAY, R. S. (transl. and ed.), *The Portuguese expedition to Abyssinia 1541-1543* (as narrated by Castanhoso, with extracts from Bermudez and Correa), Hakluyt Society, London, 1902.



- WISSMANN, H. VON, *Zur Geschichte und Landeskunde von Alt-Südarabien*, Vienna, 1964.  
 — and HÖFNER, M., *Zur historischen Geographie des vorislamischen Südarabien*, Wiesbaden, 1953.  
 WORRELL, W. H., 'Studien zum abessinischen Zauberwesen' in *ZA* 1910.  
 WRIGHT, S., LEROY, J., and JÄGER, O., *Ethiopia. Illuminated manuscripts*, UNESCO, 1961.  
 WRIGHT, W., *Catalogue of Ethiopic MSS. in the British Museum*, London, 1877.  
 WURMBRAND, M., *The death of Aaron* (Eth. text ed., transl. into Hebrew, annotated, and introd.); publ. by the Circle of Friends of the Faitlovitch Library, Tel Aviv, 1961.  
 — *The Falasha Arde'et* (transl., annotated, and introd.; in Hebrew), Tel Aviv, 1964.  
 YARON, R., *The law of the Elephantine documents* (in Hebrew), Jerusalem, 1961.  
 ZANUTTO, S., *Bibliografia etiopica: manoscritti etiopici*, Rome, 1932.  
 ZOTENBERG, H., *Catalogue des mss. Éthiopiens de la Bibliothèque nationale*, Paris, 1877.

## INDEX

- Aaron, 8, 26.  
 Aaronite, 24.  
 d'Abbadie, A., 55.  
 Abbay (Blue Nile), 2.  
 Abercrombie, L., 143.  
 'abyr sâbâdî, 109.  
 Abraha, 21.  
 Abraham, 3, 76.  
 Abraham, *Tarantam of*, 118.  
 Abraham, M., 13.  
 Abu Rumi (Abi Rukh, Abu Rukh, Abba Rukh Habesinus), 63-67, 70, 93.  
 Abu Sa'ih, 26, 27, 83.  
 Abuna, 58.  
 Adir, 10, 50, 101.  
 Addis Ababa, 33, 67, 73, 100, 108, 112, 131.  
 'adin, 126.  
 'ad, 126.  
 'adon, 126.  
 Adonay, 80, 81.  
 Adonah, 13.  
 Adula, 23.  
 Adwa (Adwa), 69, 70.  
 Aeghuppas, 12, 13.  
 Aelius Gallus, 18.  
 Aekcoly, A. Z., 26, 30, 102, 108, 115, 116, 118.  
 Africa, 1, 3, 4, 6, 7, 14, 63, 80, 90, 105, 117, 118, 127, 131, 134, 135, 141.  
 Agaw, 116, 118.  
 Aggadit, 19, 22.  
 Ahasuerus, 14.  
 Ahmad Grab, 35.  
 Akhudemneh, 22.  
 Akkadian, 126-8.  
 Aksum, Aksumite, 1, 10, 18, 20, 21, 23, 24, 25, 33, 41, 46, 47, 50, 51, 54, 56, 58, 71, 74, 75, 83, 84, 87, 88, 94, 112, 117, 121, 131, 135, 141, 142.  
 Albright, W. F., 6, 135.  
 Alexander (the Great), 2, 10, 134, 142.  
 Alexandria (Creed, Church), 1, 37, 38, 48, 78, 101.  
 Alexandrianus (Codex), 38, 48.  
 Allah, 81, 136.  
 Alliance Israélite Universelle, 116.  
 Almoner, 86.  
 Alphabet of Ben Sira, 136, 139.  
 Alvarez, F., 107, 124.  
 'andra, 127.  
 'Amde Gayon, 28, 33, 114.  
 America, 105.  
 Amhara, 63, 70.  
 Amharic, 3, 44, 64-67, 69, 70, 74, 75, 82, 91-94, 99, 101, 103, 108, 109, 114, 131.  
 Amos, 6, 34, 106.  
 'am, 127.  
 'ankâra, 127.  
 Angels, *Book of*, 118.  
 Ankober, 102.  
 Antioch, 40, 46, 48.  
 Apocrypha, 12, 13, 33, 35, 53, 61, 75.  
 Apocryphal Acts of the Apostles, 12, 13, 134.  
 Apostles, 10, 12, 50, 101, 110, 111, 144.  
 'Aqabah, 17.  
 'Aqiba, Rabbi, 17.  
 'arâ, 126.  
 Arabia, Arabian, 3, 4, 6, 8, 17-25, 41, 76, 101, 117, 121, 132, 135, 136.  
 Arabic, 8, 13, 26, 28, 32, 36-38, 42-44, 47-49, 51-53, 55, 57-59, 63-65, 75, 83, 86, 91, 93, 97, 104, 118-20, 123, 124, 126-9, 136-8, 141, 142.  
 Arabs, 17, 19, 75, 105, 134.  
 Aramean, 39-41, 43, 45, 46.  
 Aramaic, 16, 19, 24, 34, 39-41, 43, 45-47, 51, 53, 61, 62, 73, 82, 108, 119-28.  
 'aramei, 122.  
 'aramei, 122.  
 'araw, 97.  
 'arâ, 123.  
 'ar, 129.  
 Ark of the Covenant, 25, 26, 74, 78, 80-85, 87, 89, 91, 92, 135, 141, 142.  
 'armâ, 122.  
 Armenian, 66.  
 Armenian, 76.  
 Aron, 83.  
 arâ, 126.  
 'arâdî, 129.  
 'arâ, 126.  
 'aryak, 126, 127.  
 Asia, 1, 6, 41, 90.  
 'asima, 123.  
 al-'Asma' al-husnâ, 81.  
 Asmara, 34, 59, 60, 71, 74, 77, 93.  
 'asmat, 81.  
 'asat, 124.  
 Asselin de Chevillon, 63-66.  
 'asîf, 124.  
 Aswan, 6, 18.  
 'asîfî, 124.  
 Athara, 6.  
 'athara, 123.  
 Australia, 103.  
 Awash, 2.  
 Anqir, Acts of, 19.  
 Baars, W., 34, 61.  
 Baku Baku, 133, 137.  
 Babylon, 7.  
 Bachmann, Johannes, 34.  
 bâdî, 114.



- Baeteman, J., 103, 108, 113.  
*bāgāna*, 93.  
*Bayr Ambe*, 28.  
 Baḳdāwī (Baydāwī), 22, 137.  
*oādi*, 128.  
 Balkis, 143.  
 Bar Kokhba, 93.  
 Barbaria, 23.  
 Barth, J., 94.  
*Baruch*, 35.  
 da Bassano, Francesco, 10, 34, 42, 59, 60, 77, 122.  
 Basnet, R., 28.  
 Bauer, H., 95.  
 Baumgartner, W., 126.  
 Beckingham, C. F., 1, 29, 107, 134.  
*be'ad nāgān*, 131.  
 Beeston, A. F. L., 21.  
 Begamadr, 28, 116.  
*bahmā*, 127.  
*bahmāh*, 127.  
*Beauder Abba*, 17.  
 Ben Sira, 2.  
 Bent, T., 86.  
 Ben Yehuda, Eliezer, 91.  
 Benzinger, L., 79, 90-92, 105, 133.  
 Ben-Zvi, Y., 117.  
 Berlin (Library), 36, 44, 45, 69, 70, 100.  
 Bertinoro, Obadiah of, 26.  
 Bevan, A. A., 75.  
 Bewald, Ch., 9, 10, 75, 127, 141, 142.  
*Bibliotheca Aethiopica*, 34.  
*Bibliothèque Nationale*, Paris, 31, 35, 39, 59, 60.  
 Biddis, L., 87.  
 Bilgis, 134, 136-8, 142, 143.  
*binah*, 86.  
 Black, M., 9, 61, 133.  
 Blas, Y., 126.  
 Blavatsky, Mme H. P., 144.  
 Boaz, 3.  
 Bodicaa (Library), 9, 10, 33, 72, 80, 95.  
 Boyd, J. Oscar, 34, 43.  
 Brensted, J. H., 6, 7.  
*brā*, 106.  
 Britain, British, 1, 2, 71, 74.  
 British and Foreign Bible Society, 62-66, 69, 70.  
 British Museum, 13, 35, 42, 59, 60, 70, 74, 75.  
 Brockelmann, C., 94, 128, 124.  
 Bruce, James, of Kinnaird, 2, 25, 30, 63, 66, 102, 103, 107, 116.  
*brakes*, 127.  
 Budge, Sir E. A. Wallis, 9, 32, 74-76, 79, 80, 82, 134, 142.  
 Buhl, F., 91.  
 Buhlert, 22.  
 Burkitt, F. C., 32.  
*bulld*, 124.  
 Butler, A. J., 26.  
 Buxton, D. R., 85, 86, 92-94.  
*Byzantine*, 143.
- Cairo, 63, 64, 66, 70.  
 Cambridge, 63, 65, 127, 144.  
 Cambridge University Library, 35.  
 Cambyse, 14.  
 Canaan, 5, 6, 79.  
 Candace, 9-11, 13, 29, 134-5, 142.  
 Candacia, 12.  
 Caquot, A., 141.  
 Casato, U., 9.  
 Cerulli, E., 26, 28, 29, 33, 43, 48, 58, 75, 89, 111, 116, 141.  
 Chaioe, M., 35.  
 Chalcedon, 92, 40.  
 Chaldean, 33, 121.  
 Charles, R. H., 2, 5, 12, 34, 43, 44, 56.  
 Chartres, 144.  
 Cheesman, R. E., 2, 6, 113.  
*Chronicles*, 91, 133.  
 Church Missionary Society, 63, 65.  
 Claudius, 63, 95, 101, 102, 106, 109, 110.  
 Cohen, M., 89, 96, 126.  
 Colchiana, 105.  
*Confessio Classica*, 29, 30, 63, 101, 102, 106, 107, 109.  
 Conti Romini, Carlo, 3, 5, 13, 16, 18, 19, 21, 23-26, 28, 30, 32, 35, 40-43, 46, 47, 54, 56, 74, 89, 97, 98, 100, 102, 104, 107, 108, 111, 112, 116, 118, 122, 123, 131, 142.  
 Coptic (Church), 26, 38, 63, 89, 98, 100, 101, 104, 108, 110, 115.  
 Coptic (language), 44, 45, 56, 75, 141.  
 Coptic, 98, 104, 106.  
 Cosmas Indicopleustes, 23.  
 Coulbourn, P. S., 113, 122.  
 Cowley, A., 16.  
 Cranmer, Thomas, 143.  
 Cruchon, J. A., 129.  
 Cuvicorum, 134.  
 Curtis, E. L., 132.  
 Cuth, 2, 5-7, 14, 16, 25.  
 Cuthite, 8.  
 Cuthite, 3, 79, 81, 107, 117, 126.  
*dābiāra*, 88, 91, 92, 98, 99.  
*Dāmāra*, 114.  
 Dan, Danites, 14.  
*Daniel*, 34, 42, 49, 58, 60.  
 Danial (pisc. Danakil), 1.  
*dāqāq 'ara'at*, 24.  
*dāqāq*, 97, 124.  
 David, 2, 3, 8, 11, 12, 26, 83, 85, 92, 93, 106, 128.  
 David, Shield of, 79, 80.  
 Dawit Emmanuel, 71.  
 Dead Sea, 1.  
 Dead Sea Scrolls, 82, 75.  
 Dean, Winton, 144.  
*dekt*, 88, 89.  
 Debra Bizca, 95, 87, 112.  
 Debra Damo, 27.  
 Debra Dama, 43.  
 Debra Libnosa, 34, 35, 87.  
 Decalogue, 120.

- Dedan, 3, 6.  
*daggwa*, 89, 95, 96.  
 Delitzsch, F., 127.  
 Demba, 116.  
 Deramcy, J., 76.  
*deran*, 97.  
*dgm*, 82.  
*Dukaralia*, 110.  
 Dijon, 144.  
 Dillmann, A., 9, 13, 24, 27, 28, 32-33, 42, 43, 51, 52, 56, 69, 72, 84, 95, 97, 98, 100, 101, 104, 107, 111, 112, 114, 121-6, 129.  
*Ducipias*, Book of, 118.  
 Dorsey, J., 87, 94, 111.  
*dr*, 126.  
*dr'*, 126.  
 Drewes, A. J., 21.  
 Driver, Sir Godfrey R., 128.  
 Driver, S. R., 125.  
 Drower, E. S. (Lady), 122.  
 Duham, B., 7, 9.  
*dukan*, 86.  
 Du Nuwā, 19, 21, 25, 52.  
*Du-Samir*, 19.  
 Eadie, J. I., 112.  
 Ebed-Melech, 7, 8.  
*Ecclesiastes*, 34.  
*Ecclesiastus*, 35.  
*egēl*, 126.  
*egēl*, 126.  
 Egypt, Egyptian, 2, 4-7, 12-16, 38, 41, 44, 45, 49, 50, 58, 65, 101, 104-6, 108, 110, 116, 117, 135.  
*ehud*, 109.  
*ehud*, 109.  
 El, 80.  
*el*, 81.  
 Elath, 17.  
 Elbogen, I., 85, 86, 89, 95, 97-99.  
 Eldad had-Dani, 14, 25.  
 Elephantine, 5, 16, 17, 117.  
 Elijah, Abba, 118.  
 Elohe, 80, 81.  
*em*, 44, 45.  
 Emery, R. H., 13.  
 'Emperor Bible', 66-68, 93.  
*emda be'amar*, 88.  
 England, 66, 74.  
 English, 29, 70, 71, 132.  
 Enoch, 34, 51, 61, 54, 75.  
 Epiphania, 19.  
 Epiphany, 3.  
*Epistola Jeremiae*, 35.  
 Episcopi, A., 14.  
 Ertrica, 59, 121.  
 Eritrean Government Press, 71.  
 Erman, A., 141.  
 Esau, 3, 126.  
*Ethiopia Apocryphica*, 35.  
*Ethiopia Graeca*, 33.  
*Ethiopia*, 34, 96.  
*Ethiopia*, 142.  
 Ethiopic, see *Go'za*.  
 Ewing, S., 86.  
 Europe, European, 12, 33-35, 50, 67, 69, 73, 89, 102, 132, 143, 144.  
 Eweis, B. T. A., 83.  
 Ewald, C. H. A., 105.  
 Ewostatewos (Eusathios), 43, 112.  
*Ewos*, 34, 45, 78.  
 Ezekiel, 7, 34.  
*ezel*, 96.  
 Ezra, 34, 97, 129.  
 Ezra, Apocalypse of, 118.  
 Faber, Felix, 28.  
 Fairlovitch, J., 103, 108, 118.  
 Falasha, 16, 17, 21, 26, 28, 30, 37, 100-2, 105, 107-8, 115-18.  
*Faser*, 78.  
 Faria, N. A., 137.  
 Farmer, H. G., 93.  
*Fart*, 78.  
*fāhā*, 127.  
*fāhā*, 127.  
*fāhā*, 127.  
 Ferrara, Elm of, 26.  
*fāhā*, 123.  
*fāhā 'ard*, 114.  
*Fāhā Mahari*, 107.  
*Fāhā Nagast*, 92, 101-2, 104, 106-7, 110, 114, 131.  
 Fisher, W. B., 2.  
 Flad, J. M., 116.  
 Flemming, Johann, 34, 125.  
 Flight of the Holy Family, 13.  
 Fraenkel, S., 19, 100, 124.  
 Francesca, Piero deus, 145.  
 Frankfurt (Library), 36, 69.  
 French, 63.  
 Frummanus, 25, 33, 40, 45, 50, 52, 57, 59.  
*flā*, 82.  
*fly*, 127.  
 Fumagalli, C., 63, 70.  
*Fūhā al-Habab*, 28.  
 Gabriel, Gavino, 90.  
*gad*, 43.  
*Gadai*, 72.  
 Gagnon, M., 128.  
*gāhāra*, 119, 123.  
 Galawdeyem, 29.  
 Galla, 108.  
 Gana, 10, 29.  
*gāhāra*, 124.  
*gā*, 128.  
*Go'za*, 3, 11, 19, 20, 24, 25, 31-64, 66, 67, 69, 70, 71, 74, 77, 82, 86, 91-93, 97-99, 101, 103, 104, 108, 109, 117-32, 134, 137, 141-2.  
*gā'ka*, 96.  
 Gehenna, 123.  
 Geger, A., 19.  
 Gerasa, 8, 82.  
 Gerasa, 34, 43, 69, 70, 76.



## INDEX

- Geon, 2.  
Gesenius, W., 69, 91, 125.  
Geyd, 108.  
Ghaman, 22.  
Ghiberti, Lorenzo, 145.  
ghib<sup>ti</sup>, 100.  
Gihon, 2, 5.  
Gildemeister, J., 40, 45, 52.  
Giezberg, Louis, 5, 7, 13, 14, 19, 76, 138.  
Glycon, 2.  
Glaser, E., 5, 17, 18.  
Gleave, H. C., 34.  
gnostic, 75.  
Gobat, Samuel (Bishop), 69.  
Godjam, 69.  
Gog and Magog, 12.  
Goitein, S. D., 19, 20.  
golah, 15, 21.  
Goldenberg, G., 54, 65.  
Goldmark, K., 144.  
Goldschmidt, Lazarus, 34, 36, 69.  
Goldziher, Ignaz, 11.  
Gondar, 63, 66.  
Gordin, Robert, 126.  
Gordon, C. H., 126, 127, 133.  
Gorgeon, Apocalyp of, 113.  
Gospels, 32, 34, 39, 41, 44-47, 49, 50, 52-55, 60, 65, 67, 69, 71, 95.  
Gounod, C. F., 144.  
Gratz, H., 18.  
Grat, G., 47, 86.  
Grant, F. C., 42.  
Granville, Esch, 74.  
Grebaut, Sylvain, 35, 95.  
Greek, 9, 10, 23, 36-39, 41-53, 55-62, 64, 67, 71, 75, 95, 96, 122, 123, 129, 141, 142.  
Gregory, Abba, 66, 122, 110, 116.  
Gregory, C. R., 36, 40, 52.  
Gregory of Nyssa, 110.  
Griaule, M., 80.  
Grünbaum, M., 19, 137, 193.  
Guadi, Ignacio, 3, 16, 19, 39, 39-41, 43, 44, 47-49, 51-54, 58, 84, 89, 95, 101, 104, 107, 109, 112, 114, 116, 122, 131.  
Guld, Michelangelo, 19, 22.  
Gullinome, A., 8, 12.  
Gunde Gundic, 35.  
gu, 108.  
Habakkuk, 34.  
Habeshat (Habshat), 21.  
hab<sup>ti</sup>, 21.  
Habsburg, E., 131.  
Hackupell, L., 28, 39, 43, 49, 52, 53, 60.  
Haddih (Hadi), 20, 48.  
Haddamawt, 17.  
Haffarah, 98.  
Haggadah, 97.  
Haggai, 34.  
Haidt Schlämke, 2, 56, 67, 112, 139.  
hakon, 98.  
Halévy, J., 116, 118.  
Hall, Ronald, 131.  
Ham, Hamitic, 3, 5, 6.  
ham<sup>ti</sup>, 127.  
Hamdān, 137.  
Hamdāni, 137.  
Hamites, 3, 4.  
Hamil, 33.  
Hammenschmidt, E., 79, 86-88, 92-94, 97, 99, 109-11, 132.  
ham<sup>ti</sup>, 127.  
hang<sup>ti</sup>, 123.  
Händel, G. F., 144.  
hang<sup>ti</sup>, 123.  
han<sup>ti</sup>, 124.  
hapax legomenon, 128.  
Haqalet, 32.  
Harden, J. M., 110.  
Harper, W. R., 9.  
Harris, W. Cornwallis, 102, 103, 112.  
Hartom, A. S., 9.  
hath<sup>ti</sup>, 88.  
Hastings, James, 7, 10, 43, 48, 92, 106.  
hat<sup>ti</sup>, 124.  
hastania, 82.  
hat<sup>ti</sup>, 124.  
Havilah, 3.  
haykal, 68.  
haymanet, 40, 122.  
haymanet<sup>ti</sup>, 40, 122.  
Hayy, 50, 87.  
Hebraic, 11, 15, 20-23, 25, 47, 73, 76, 79, 80, 88, 95, 97-101, 104, 106, 108, 110, 112-15, 117, 118, 123, 135.  
Hebrew, 5, 9, 17, 19, 20, 24, 26, 30, 32, 34, 36-38, 41-43, 47, 49, 55-58, 61-67, 79-82, 93-100, 106, 117-30, 132, 133, 135-7, 142.  
Hedjase, 6.  
hem<sup>ti</sup>, 127.  
Heider, A., 43, 119.  
hikal, 88, 89.  
Hendake, 143.  
Henry VIII, 143.  
herim q<sup>ti</sup>, 91.  
Herodotus, 3, 16, 103.  
Hering, Johann Jakob, 32, 37-38.  
Hesychian Recension, 38.  
Hesychius, 42.  
Hecapia, 43.  
hif<sup>ti</sup>, 128.  
Himyaritic (Himyaritic), 19, 190.  
Hirah, 22.  
Hirman, 133.  
hirit<sup>ti</sup>, 128.  
Hirschberg, H. Z., 17, 18.  
Hiri, P. K., 9.  
hit<sup>ti</sup>, 127.  
hit<sup>ti</sup>, 127.  
Höcker, M., 6, 17, 18, 137.  
Hollywood, 132.  
Homer, 3, 129.  
hom<sup>ti</sup>, 127.  
Homotus, 23.  
Hommel, 2, 6.  
hom<sup>ti</sup>, 127.

- Honeyman, A. M., 126.  
Horniman Museum, London, 89.  
Hort, F. J. A., 39.  
*Hotea*, 34.  
*Hum*, 82.  
*hum*, 82.  
*Hum*, 82.  
*Hum*, 82.  
Hubbard, D. A., 9, 10, 19, 75-78, 83, 84,  
132, 138.  
*huchad*, 136.  
*Hukin*, 103.  
Huntingford, G. W. B., 28, 107, 134.  
Hupfeld, H., 125.  
Hyatt, H. M., 3, 85, 92-94, 108, 113.  
*Hymn of the Soul*, 75.  
Hyrticus, 13.
- Ibn al-'Asal, 201.  
Ibn al-Azir, 137.  
Ibn Hishak, 22.  
Ibn Ishak, 22.  
Ibn Khaldun, 137.  
India, 3, 12, 14, 66.  
Infancy Gospel, 13.  
Iran, A. K., 21.  
Isaac, 3.  
Isahab, 6, 34, 52, 72.  
Isiah, Ascension of, 34.  
Isenberg, C. W., 63, 69.  
Islamites, 13.  
Islam, I., 11, 15, 20, 201, 203, 136, 137.  
Israel, 48.  
Israel, Israelites, 3, 6, 8, 9, 12, 14, 15, 20,  
25, 26, 76, 83, 91, 93, 94, 108, 114, 117,  
132, 140.  
Italy, 102.  
It'zaura, 134.  
Iyaru I., 74.
- Jacob, 3, 81, 106.  
Jacobine, 22, 41, 98, 115.  
Jamme, A., 79.  
*Janby*, 131.  
Jenkins, Jean, 89.  
Jeremiah, 7, 34, 42, 44, 45.  
Jérôme Cahira Mian, Abbe, 96.  
Jerusalem, I., 20, 29, 34, 64, 66, 69, 82-84,  
88, 89, 94, 133, 135, 137, 138, 142.  
Jesus, 102, 107.  
Jesus, 3, 77.  
Jewish Aramaic, 20, 24, 39, 83, 87, 121-3.  
Jews, Jewish, 8-8, 15-30, 36, 37, 39, 41,  
43, 47, 57, 73-76, 79, 80, 85-87, 89, 93,  
97-99, 101, 102, 105-10, 114-18, 121-3,  
125, 129, 133-4.  
*jim*, 138.  
Job, 6, 34, 42, 135.  
Johnson, A. R., 131.  
Johnson, Dr. Samuel, 29.  
Jones, 34.  
Jonathan, Rabbi, 135.  
Jones, Sir William, 63, 86.
- Jordan, 1.  
Josephus, 2, 14, 18, 26, 93, 135.  
Jowett, William, 63-66, 70, 71.  
*Jubilee*, 34, 61.  
Judaea, 7.  
Judaeo-Christians, 103, 107.  
Judah, 8, 11, 12, 78.  
Judean, Judaea, 15-20, 38, 47, 57, 74, 82,  
102, 107, 111-13, 116, 117, 119.  
Judith, 143.  
*judit*, 35.  
Judith (Queen), 25.  
Julius Caesar, 2.  
al-Jumahi, 19.
- Ka, 44.  
Kabbala, 94.  
Kabbalah, Kabbalistic, 80, 133, 144.  
*kalam*, 91.  
Kable, P., 95.  
*K'alat arabi*, 82.  
*K'alat sharyaf*, 82.  
Kammerer, A., 23, 24.  
Kandake, 142.  
*Kakaki*, 142.  
Kath, A. L., 22.  
*Kebra Nagast*, 3, 9-11, 19, 26, 74-78, 80,  
83, 131, 132, 139-42, 144.  
*ka's*, 128.  
Kell, 102.  
*kawa*, 99.  
*kawr*, 95, 94.  
Kewen, 128.  
Kernack, J. F., 143, 144.  
*kesh*, 17.  
Khader, 18.  
Kikani Maryam Kam, Abbe, 59.  
Kitano, 13.  
King, 22, 33, 135.  
King's College Chapel, 144.  
*kissh*, 39.  
Kipling, R., 143.  
Kirbi, 83.  
Koehler, L., 91, 123, 127, 128.  
Kolmodin, J. A., 71.  
Konig, E., 125.  
*kowa*, 128.  
Krapf, L., 66, 69, 71.  
Krauss, S., 17.  
Kruter, 81.  
Krommel, E., 73, 100.
- Laba, 126.  
Laba, 126.  
La, 124.  
Lakkela, 87.  
Lammont, 34, 90, 96.  
Lambrecht, A. van, 34, 35, 44.  
*Le royaume d'Israël*, 123.  
Lasky, M. J., 73.  
Latini, 11, 10, 30.  
Le Grand, Abbe, 29.  
Le Mana, 144.











- Timoretto, 145.  
 Tirhaqa (Tirhakah), 7.  
*tiri*, 114.  
 Tisserant, Eugène, 34, 35, 95.  
*Tubit*, 35.  
*tef*, 94.  
*Tohoroth*, 104.  
 Torah, 85, 122.  
 Tosefta, 89.  
 Trimmingham, J. S., 85, 88, 89.  
*Trisagion*, 99.  
 Tubba', 137.  
 Tubiana, J., 89.  
 Tudela, Benjamin of, 26, 116.  
 Turaev, Boris, 36, 110, 112.  
 Tur-Sinai, N. H., 133.  
 Ugaritic, 126-8.  
 d-'Ulk, 6.  
 'ulam, 88, 89.  
 Ullendorff, Edward, 2, 9, 10, 13, 34-36, 61, 67, 80, 87, 94, 95, 116, 118, 134.  
 UNESCO, 89.  
 Urim, 79.  
 Urin, M., 6.  
 Varenbergh, J., 131.  
 Vatican (Library), 35, 95, 99-101.  
 Vaticanus (Codex), 38, 48.  
 de Vaux, R., 79, 83, 85, 90-92, 106, 133.  
 Verma, G., 61.  
 Victoria, Queen, 74.  
 Vienna (Library), 36.  
 Villoteau, G. A., 96.  
 Voobus, A., 50-55, 57, 60, 61.  
*Verlags*, 36, 38, 39, 42, 46, 48, 50-53, 55-58, 60, 61, 64, 77.  
 Vulgate, 39, 60, 64.  
 Walker, C. H., 108.  
 Warsaw, 33.  
 Watt, W. Montgomery, 18.  
 Weil, G., 196.  
 Wellen, R., 89, 98, 99.  
 Wellhausen, J., 11, 22, 101, 105, 106, 120.  
 Wendt, K., 111.  
 Wernliya, 80.  
 Westcott, B. F., 39.  
 Whiston, W., 2.  
 Whiteway, R. S., 30.  
 Wilson, F. A. C., 144.  
 Windsor Castle, Royal Library, 36.  
 Winquist, C., 71.  
 Wisnmann, H. von, 6, 18.  
 Wither, G., 143.  
 Woolley, Sir Leonard, 145.  
 Worrell, W. H., 79.  
 Wright, Stephen, 36.  
 Wright, William, 19, 35, 60, 70, 74.  
 Wurmbrand, Max, 118.  
*yā-amarēkha sāwasau*, 96.  
*yāmābār lēh*, 86.  
*yamā nora'im*, 113.  
 Yared, 95.  
 Yaron, R., 16.  
*Yathar Shemot*, 13.  
 Yathrib, 18.  
 Yeats, W. B., 143, 144.  
 Yemen, Yemenite, 19-21, 26, 116, 130.  
 Yehaq (of Aksum), 75, 141.  
 Yohannes, Emperor, 74.  
*yom hak-kippurim* (*yom kippur*), 114.  
 YSR, 19.  
 YSR 'L, 19.  
*yusf 'r' y'r*, 19.  
 Zadok, 77.  
*zagar*, 107.  
 Zamakhari (Zamakhari), 22, 137.  
*zānā*, 124.  
 Zanutto, S., 64.  
*zar*, 79.  
 Zar'a Ya'qob, 27, 28, 97, 98, 100, 104, 107, 111, 112.  
*Zanaat Naphalā*, 5.  
*zān*, 124.  
*Zachariah*, 34.  
 Zedekiah, 7, 8.  
*zēkē adgar*, 112.  
*zema*, 92, 95, 96.  
*Zema Mus*, 118.  
 Zephaniah, 18, 34.  
 Zien, 24, 74, 83, 84, 108, 141.  
 Zipporah, 8.  
*zma*, 124.  
 Zoltenberg, H., 31, 32, 35, 57-59, 42, 43, 50, 53, 54, 56, 64, 96, 119.  
*z'*, 126.  
*z'*, 126.  
 Zuurmond, R., 34, 61.

## BIBLICAL REFERENCES

Acts	8: 26	10	11: 1	5
	8: 27	9, 10		
	8: 33	10	Add. Esther	12
	15: 20	101	B: 1	
	15: 29	101		
Amos			Exodus	80
	7: 14	128	3: 13-14	98
	9: 7	8	15: 1	98
			15: 21	119
1 Chronicles			16: 33	119
	4: 41	17	16: 35	104, 105
	13: 8	93	19: 15	80
	15: 20	91	20: 7	80
	16: 4	91	23: 13	103
	23: 3-5	92	23: 19	83
	23: 30	90, 91	25: 10-22	88
	25: 1	91	26: 33	103
			34: 26	83
			37: 1-9	114
			40: 34-38	
2 Chronicles			Ezekiel	7
	8: 14	91		6
	9: 1	141	27: 10	7
	9: 1-12	132	29: 10	7, 43
	12: 3	7	30: 4	6, 7
	14: 8	8	30: 5	7
	14: 11	8	30: 9	88
	14: 12	7	38: 5	88
	15: 8	8	40	
	21: 16		41	
1 Corinthians			Galatians	106
	7: 18-19	106	5: 6	
Daniel			Genesis	158
	11: 13-15	49	1: 9	2, 5
	11: 43	7	2: 13	78
			9	102
Deuteronomy			10: 4	5
	6: 8-9	79	10: 6-8	17
	10: 1-5	84	10: 7	17
	10: 8	83	10: 26	153
	14: 8	103	16: 9	107, 108
	14: 9	103	17	107
	23: 5-10	115	17: 27	3
	23: 7-9	3	18: 4	78
	26: 17	127	19	5
	28: 18	127	20: 3	124
	27: 14	91	23: 29	126
	32: 40	40	25: 30	81
			29	80
			30: 30	103
			31: 33	3
			33: 6-7	78
			38	
Ezekiel				
	51: 9	61		
	24: 1	61		
	27: 6	61		



